Directions for Use
Alaris® System

Supports Guardrails® Suite MX (v8)
August 2005
## Table of Contents

Each of the Alaris® product-specific Sections has its own table of contents.

General Contact Information ................................................................. i
Introduction .................................................................................. ii
Installation .................................................................................. iv
PC Point-of-Care Unit ................................................................. 1
Pump and Syringe Modules ....................................................... 2
PCA Module ............................................................................... 3
SpO₂ Module ............................................................................. 4
EtCO₂ Module ........................................................................... 5
Auto-ID Module .......................................................................... 6
Nurse Call Accessory ................................................................. 7
Communications Interface Board Accessory .......................... 8

Appendix
- Maintenance .......................................................................... A-1
- Cleaning ................................................................................ A-1
- Service Information ............................................................... A-2
- Warranty ............................................................................... A-3
- Regulations and Standards .................................................... A-5
- Compliance .......................................................................... A-5
- Trademarks .......................................................................... A-14
General Contact Information

Cardinal Health
Alaris® Products
10221 Wateridge Circle
San Diego, California 92121

http://www.cardinal.com/alaris

Customer Advocacy - North America

Clinical and technical feedback.

Phone: 800.854.7128, Ext. 7812
E-Mail: CustomerFeedback@cardinal.com

Technical Support - North America

Maintenance and service information support; troubleshooting.

United States:
Phone: 858.458.6003
800.854.7128, Ext. 6003
Canada:
Phone: Eastern: 800.908.9918
Western: 800.908.9919

Customer Care - North America

Instrument return, service assistance, and order placement.

United States:
Phone: 800.482.4822
Canada:
Phone: 800.387.8309
Introduction

The Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit ("PC Unit") Section of this Directions for Use ("DFU") provides procedures and information applicable to the Alaris® System and the PC Unit. Each of the other major Sections provides product-specific procedures and information.

The Alaris® System (formerly known as "Medley™ System") is a modular system intended for adult, pediatric and neonatal care in today's growing professional healthcare environment. It consists of the PC Unit, the Guardrails® Suite MX, and up to 4 detachable modules (or "channels") providing infusion, monitoring and bar code scanning capabilities.

Guardrails® Suite MX for the Alaris® System brings a new level of medication error prevention to the point of patient care. The Guardrails® Suite MX features medication dosing, concentration delivery rate and optional initial programming guidelines for up to 15 patient-specific care areas, referred to as profiles. Each profile contains a specific Guardrails® Drug Library and channel labels, as well as instrument configurations appropriate for the care area. Optional drug-specific Guardrails® Clinical Advisories ("Clinical Advisory") provide visual messages. Dosing limits for each Guardrails® Drug entry may be a Guardrails® Hard Limit ("Hard Limit") that cannot be overridden during infusion programming and/or a Guardrails® Soft Limit ("Soft Limit") that can be overridden, based on clinical requirements.

A data set is developed and approved by the facility’s own multi-disciplinary team using the Guardrails® Editor Software ("Editor Software"), the PC-based authoring tool. A data set is then transferred to the Alaris® System by qualified personnel. The approved data sets are maintained by the Editor Software for future updates and reference.

Information about a Guardrails® Alert ("Alert") that occurs during use is stored within the PC Unit, and can be accessed using the Guardrails® CQI Reporter ("CQI Reporter").
Cardinal Health 303, Inc. ("Cardinal Health"), a wholly-owned subsidiary of Cardinal Health, Inc., was formerly known as ALARIS Medical Systems, Inc. Alaris® product labeling will transition to the Cardinal Health name over time. During this transition, product labeling may reflect the ALARIS Medical Systems name and/or Cardinal Health name.

Documentation provided with Alaris® System products may reference product not present in your facility or not yet available for sale in your area.

A superscript number (for example, (1)) identifies additional information provided as a NOTE at the end of the procedure.

**WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS:**

Product-specific warnings and cautions, covered in the applicable Sections of this DFU, provide information needed to safely and effectively use the Alaris® System.

A **DANGER** is an alert to an imminent hazard which could result in serious personal injury and/or product damage if proper procedures are not followed.

A **WARNING** is an alert to a potential hazard which could result in serious personal injury and/or product damage if proper procedures are not followed.

A **CAUTION** is an alert to a potential hazard which could result in minor personal injury and/or product damage if proper procedures are not followed.
Installation

Instruments are tested and calibrated before they are packaged for shipment. To ensure proper operation after shipment, it is recommended that an incoming inspection be performed before placing the instrument in use.

Prior to placing the Alaris® System in use:


2. Verify whether or not Profiles feature has been enabled (reference PC Unit Section, "System Options", "System Configuration").

NOTE:

① To enable the Profiles feature, a hospital-defined best-practice data set must be uploaded to the PC Unit.
Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit
8000 Series
TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE (Continued)

BATTERY CARE AND MAINTENANCE ................................................................. 1-40
  Battery Type and Charging ............................................................................. 1-40
  Battery Charge ............................................................................................. 1-40
  Battery Care .................................................................................................. 1-40
  Battery Cautions and Disposal ...................................................................... 1-41

INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS ......................................................................... 1-41
This Section of the Directions for Use (DFU) provides Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit ("PC Unit") and Alaris® System instructions and information. It is used in conjunction with the following:

- Maintenance Software and User Manual for Alaris® System
- PC Unit Technical Service Manual
- Product-Specific Sections of this DFU

The PC Unit is the core of the Alaris® System and provides a common user interface for programming infusions and monitoring, which helps to reduce complexity at the point of care.

**Alarms, Errors, Messages:** Reference "Troubleshooting and Maintenance" for specific PC Unit alarms, errors and messages.

**Contraindications:** None known.

**Electromagnetic Environment:** Reference "Appendix" Section of this DFU ("Regulations and Standards", Compliance").
Modules can be attached to either side of the PC Unit or to either side of another module. The process to attach or detach is the same for either side, whether attaching/detaching to/from a PC Unit or another module.

1. Position free module at a 45° angle, aligning IUI connectors.

2. Rotate free module down against PC Unit or attached module, until release latch snaps in place.

**NOTES:**

① Individual hospital/facility may choose to permanently attach modules. To remove permanently attached modules, contact qualified service personnel.

② Application of adhesive tape or other materials to the sides of the PC Unit and modules may prevent proper latching.

③ The Alaris® System is designed to operate a maximum of 4 infusion or monitoring modules. The Alaris® Auto-ID Module is not included in the 4-module total. Modules added in excess of 4 will not be recognized by the system. The module(s) can be attached in any position; however, when mounted on an IV pole, it is recommended that a balanced configuration be maintained.

**WARNING**

When properly secured/snapped, the release latch provides a very secure connection between modules. If not properly latched, a module can be dislodged during operation.
1. Ensure module(s) is powered off before detaching.

2. Push module release latch and then rotate module(s) up and away from PC Unit or attached module (opposite to motion shown above) to disengage connectors.
   - Alaris® System reidentifies and shows appropriate module identification (A, B, C or D), from left to right.
   - Appropriate module position(s) (A, B or C) for remaining module(s) appear on Main Display.

### Adding Module(s) While System is Powered On

Add module as described in "Attaching Module(s)".

- System tests module, causing all LED segments and indicator lights of displays to illuminate briefly.
- Appropriate module identification display (A, B, C or D) illuminates. Modules are always labeled left to right, so if a module is added to left of other modules, all modules will be reidentified. Module reidentification does NOT interrupt or affect infusion or monitoring on active modules.
- Module positions (A, B, C or D) appear on Main Display.

### NOTE:

① If any of the following conditions are observed, the affected module must be removed from use and inspected by qualified personnel:

- LED segments are not illuminated on displays during power-on test.
- Indicator lights do not illuminate.
- Appropriate module identification (A, B, C or D) is not displayed.

If the affected module operates normally when it is attached via the alternate IUI connector, it may be used until a replacement module can be substituted.
Start-Up

Powering On System

1. Connect PC Unit to an external AC power source.
2. Press SYSTEM ON.
3. System self test begins:
   • Diagnostics test causes all LED display segments and Status Indicator lights of attached module(s) to illuminate briefly.
   • Power Indicator illuminates.
   • Appropriate module identification (A, B, C or D) displays on attached module(s).
   • An Audio tone sounds.
   • If PM Reminder option is enabled and scheduled preventive maintenance is due, MAINTENANCE REMINDER screen appears.
   • At completion of system-on test, New Patient? screen appears.

NOTES:

① Previous infusion parameters are automatically cleared after 8 hours.
② If any of the following conditions are observed, the PC Unit or the affected attached module must be removed from use and inspected by qualified personnel:
   • LED segments are not illuminated during system-on test.
   • Indicator lights do not illuminate.
   • Appropriate module identification (A, B, C or D) is not displayed.
   • Audio tone does not sound.
   • Main Display does not appear backlit, appears irregular, or has evidence of a row of pixels not functioning properly.

If the affected module operates normally when it is attached via an alternate IUI connector, it may be used until a replacement module can be substituted.
Responding to Maintenance Reminder

If the Preventive Maintenance (PM) Reminder option is enabled and the PC Unit or an attached module is due for preventive maintenance, a **MAINTENANCE REMINDER** message appears at power up.

1. Remove and, if needed, replace module requiring maintenance with a new module (reference "Attaching and Detaching Modules").

2. If "system" (PC Unit and attached modules) was powered off to replace PC Unit, reinitiate start-up process.

   **OR**

   If an "attached module" (such as, an Alaris® Pump Module) was powered off and removed, **MAINTENANCE REMINDER** display reflects removal of that module. To continue start-up process, press **CONFIRM** soft key.

**NOTES:**

① If necessary, the reminder can be temporarily bypassed by pressing the **CONFIRM** soft key.

② Notify the appropriate facility personnel when a **MAINTENANCE REMINDER** occurs.

Adjusting Display Contrast

1. Press **DISPLAY CONTRST** soft key.
2. To adjust display for optimum viewing, use **Lighter/Darker** soft keys.

3. To return to main screen, press **CONFIRM** soft key.

---

### Selecting New Patient and Profile Options

The following procedures assume the Profiles feature is enabled.

1. Select required **NEW PATIENT?** option.
   - To indicate programming is for a new patient and clear all stored patient parameters from memory, press **Yes** soft key.
     
     **OR**
     - To confirm programming is for same patient and retain all stored patient parameters, press **No** soft key.
       - Last used profile displays.

2. Accept or change current profile:
   - To accept current profile, press **Yes** soft key.
     - Main screen appears.
   - To change profile, press **No** soft key and continue with next step.
     - Profile selection screen appears.
The option to enter and display a 16-character alphanumeric patient identifier is always available. The instrument may be configured to automatically display the **Patient ID Entry** screen during start up or to provide access only through the **Systems Options** menu (reference “System Options”). If **Yes** was selected to indicate programming for a new patient, perform one of following:

- If patient identifier is not required, press **CONFIRM** or **EXIT** soft key.
- To manually enter patient identifier, use numeric data entry keys and/or alpha speed keys.① ② ③ ④ ⑤
- To scan bar code on patient identification band, reference **Alaris® Auto-ID Module (“Auto-ID Module”) Section** of this **DFU**.

### NOTES:

① If the Profiles feature is disabled, the main menu appears.
② To view additional choices, press **PAGE DOWN** soft key.

#### Patient ID Entry Feature

The option to enter and display a 16-character alphanumeric patient identifier is always available. The instrument may be configured to automatically display the **Patient ID Entry** screen during start up or to provide access only through the **Systems Options** menu (reference “System Options”). If **Yes** was selected to indicate programming for a new patient, perform one of following:

- If patient identifier is not required, press **CONFIRM** or **EXIT** soft key.
- To manually enter patient identifier, use numeric data entry keys and/or alpha speed keys.① ② ③ ④ ⑤
- To scan bar code on patient identification band, reference **Alaris® Auto-ID Module (“Auto-ID Module”) Section** of this **DFU**.
NOTES:
1. An alphanumeric identifier, of up to 16 characters, can be entered.
2. Press the soft key next to a letter group to list letters in that group. Press the soft key next to an individual letter to enter that letter.
3. To access the letter "Z" and special characters (hyphen, underscore, space), press the PAGE DOWN soft key.
4. To clear an entire entry, press CLEAR key.
5. To back up a single character at a time, press CANCEL key.

Adjusting Audio Volume

1. Press AUDIO ADJUST soft key.

2. To change volume to desired level, press either Louder or Softer soft key. To sample alarm loudness level, press Test soft key.

3. To return to PC Unit screen, press MAIN SCREEN soft key.
   - After 30 seconds without a key press, Main Display appears.
Locking/Unlocking Tamper Resist

1. Initiate operation of applicable module(s).

2. Press and hold Tamper Resist Switch, on back of PC Unit, for 3 to 4 seconds (reference "General Information", "Features and Displays", "Operating Features, Controls, Indicators").

   - An advisory tone (if Key Click Audio is enabled) and a three-second PANEL LOCKED prompt on Main Display confirm activation.

   - When Tamper Resist is active, keypad panel is locked; however, clinician may:
     - Silence audio alarm.
     - View volume(s) infused.
     - View and test audio alarm setting.
     - View selected parameters on attached modules.

   Any other key press will result in a visual PANEL LOCKED prompt and, if Key Click Audio is enabled, an illegal key–press audio advisory.

3. To unlock keypad panel, press and hold Tamper Resist Switch for 3 to 4 seconds.

   - An advisory tone (if Key Click Audio is enabled) and a three-second PANEL UNLOCKED prompt on Main Display confirm activation.
Power Off System

Press and hold CHANNEL OFF key until a beep is heard (approximately 1.5 seconds) and then release to initiate power down.

- During power off sequence, Main Display flashes Powering Down.
- Once all attached modules are powered off, PC Unit automatically powers down.

**NOTE:**

1. To interrupt the power down sequence, quickly press any key (except SYSTEM ON) on the PC Unit.

System Options

Display Contrast

1. Press OPTIONS key.

2. Press Display Contrast soft key.

3. Adjust display and return to main screen (reference “Start-Up”, “Adjusting Display Contrast” procedure).
3. Scan or manually enter patient identifier:
   - To manually enter patient identifier, use numeric data entry keys and/or alpha speed keys.
   - To scan bar code on patient identification band, reference Auto-ID Module Section of this DFU.
4. To verify correct entry, press CONFIRM soft key.
System Options (Continued)

Patient ID (Continued)

Modifying

1. Press OPTIONS key.
2. Press Patient ID soft key.
3. To clear entire entry, press CLEAR key.
   OR
   To back up a single character at a time, press CANCEL key.

4. To enter modified patient identifier, use numeric data entry keys and/or alpha speed keys.

5. To verify correct entry, press CONFIRM soft key.
   • New Patient ID Entry verification screen appears.
System Options (Continued)

Patient ID (Continued)

Modifying (Continued)

6. To accept modified Patient ID, press Yes soft key.
   • Main screen appears with new Patient ID.
   OR
   To retain original (old) Patient ID, press No soft key.
   • Main screen appears with old Patient ID.

NOTES:
① An alphanumeric identifier, of up to 16 characters, can be entered.
② Press the soft key next to a letter group to list letters in that group. Press the soft key next to an individual letter to enter that letter.
③ To access the letter "Z" and special characters (hyphen, underscore, space), press the PAGE DOWN soft key.
④ To clear an entire entry, press CLEAR key.
⑤ To back up a single character at a time, press CANCEL key.

Time of Day

1. Press OPTIONS key.
3. If time is correct, press **CONFIRM** soft key.
   **OR**
   To change time, press **Change Time** soft key.

4. Enter current Time of Day.

5. Press **CONFIRM** soft key.

**NOTE:**
① The format is a 24-hour clock (military time).
1. Press **OPTIONS** key.
2. Press **Power Down All Channels** soft key.

3. Press **Yes** soft key.
   - During power off sequence, Main Display flashes **POWERING DOWN**.

---

**Anesthesia Mode**

When the Anesthesia Mode is enabled while a module is paused, the module remains in an indefinite pause until restarted.

When Anesthesia Mode is enabled:
- All limits are set to **Soft**.
- Dose checking mode is set to **Smart**.
- Key-press audio is turned off.
- Tamper Resist Mode (panel locked) is not available.
- All Guardrails® Drug entries are available for selection.

---

**CAUTION**

When the Alaris® System is set up for use in Anesthesia Mode, it is important to **select the profile** that corresponds with the care area the patient will be taken to when the Anesthesia Mode is discontinued. This ensures that the Alaris® System will be in the correct profile following the use of the Anesthesia Mode.
Enabling

1. Press OPTIONS key.
2. Press Anesthesia Mode soft key.

3. Press Enable soft key.
4. Press CONFIRM soft key.

• Bolus dose is automatically available for:
  ♦ Guardrails® Drugs that have bolus dose limits defined
  ♦ generic drug calculation setup

• Anesthesia Mode, alternating with other required prompts, displays in prompt bar of Main Display.

• Callback audio for paused module is permanently silenced.

• Review of drug calculation setup page is omitted when restoring a stopped drug calculation.

• Clinical Advisories are not displayed.

• Auto-ID Module is not available.
The Anesthesia Mode can be disabled, and normal operation resumed, using either of the following three methods:

- System Options menu.
- Disconnecting from AC power.
- Connecting to AC power.

From System Options Menu

1. Press OPTIONS key.
2. Press Anesthesia Mode soft key.
3. Press Disable soft key.
4. Press CONFIRM soft key.

   Anesthesia Mode no longer appears on Main Display, indicating it has been disabled.

Connecting To AC Power

1. Connect system to AC power.
2. To continue using Anesthesia Mode, press Yes soft key.
   
   OR

   To discontinue Anesthesia Mode, press No soft key.

Disconnecting from AC Power

1. Disconnect system from AC.

   - Anesthesia Mode is automatically disabled.
   - All currently running infusions continue.
   - A prompt appears as an alert that Anesthesia Mode has been discontinued.
System Options (Continued)

Anesthesia Mode (Continued)

Disabling (Continued)

Disconnecting from AC Power (Continued)

2. Press CONFIRM soft key.

Battery Runtime

1. Press OPTIONS key.
2. Press PAGE DOWN soft key.
3. Press Battery Runtime soft key.

4. To return to main screen, press CANCEL key or EXIT soft key.
System Options (Continued)

1. Press OPTIONS key.
2. Press PAGE DOWN soft key.
3. Press System Configuration soft key.

4. Press PC Unit soft key.

5. To review various system configuration settings, press PAGE DOWN and PAGE UP soft keys.
System Options  (Continued)

System Configuration  (Continued)

6. To return to main screen, press CANCEL key or EXIT soft key.

NOTES:
① The Profiles option is listed only if it is disabled.
② The Dose Checking option is listed only if the Profiles option is enabled and a valid data set is present.

Software Versions

1. Press OPTIONS key.
2. Press PAGE DOWN soft key.
3. Press Software Versions soft key.
4. To review software version information, press View soft key next to applicable module.
   OR
   To return to main screen, press EXIT soft key.

5. To return to previous screen, press EXIT soft key.①

NOTE:
① “nn.nn” in the illustrated display represents a software version.
Warnings and Cautions

DANGER

Explosion risk if used in the presence of flammable anesthetic agents or gasses.

General

WARNINGS

- If an alarm condition occurs while the audio alarm is silenced, the only alarm indications will be visual displays and symbols related to the alarm condition.
- Assess patient's condition before silencing an alarm. Do not silence alarm if patient safety might be compromised.
- Before each use, verify the alarm limits are appropriate for the patient.
- When properly secured/snapped, the release latch provides a very secure connection between modules. If not properly latched, a module can be dislodged during operation.
- Disconnect from main (AC) and battery power when performing maintenance.
- Electrical shock hazard. Do not open case. Refer to qualified service personnel.

CAUTIONS

- The Alaris® System is not intended to replace supervision by medical personnel. The user must become thoroughly familiar with the Alaris® System features, operation and accessories prior to use.
- Always use a grounded, three-wire receptacle. Where the integrity of the protective earth grounding system is in doubt, operate on internal battery.
- Should an instrument or accessory be dropped or severely jarred, it should be immediately taken out of use and inspected by qualified service personnel, to ensure its proper function prior to reuse.
- If an instrument appears damaged, contact Cardinal Health for authorization to return it for repair.
Electromagnetic Compatibility

**WARNINGS**

- Do not use the Alaris® System near Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI).

- Use of any **accessory, transducer or cable** other than those specified may result in increased emissions or decreased Alaris® System immunity.

**CAUTIONS**

- The Alaris® System should not be used **adjacent to or stacked with other equipment**. If adjacent or stacked use is necessary, monitor the Alaris® System to verify it is operating normally in that setup.

- The Alaris® System is intended for use by healthcare professionals only. This is a CISPR 11 Class B Group 2 medical system. In a domestic environment, this system **may cause radio interference**. Reorienting, relocating or shielding the system, or filtering the connection to the public mains network, are examples of steps that can be taken to reduce or eliminate interference.

- Medical electrical equipment **needs special precautions regarding EMC** and needs to be installed and used according to the EMC information provided in the "Appendix" Section of this DFU (reference "Regulations and Standards", "Compliance").

- **Portable and mobile RF communications** can affect medical electrical equipment.

- **Interconnected data communications systems** must be certified to IEC 950 (data processing equipment) or IEC 60601–1 (electromedical equipment).

- **Nurse call systems** must be certified to UL 1069 (hospital signaling and nurse call equipment) or comply with the requirements specified in IEC 60601–1.
Reference the product-specific Section of this DFU that applies to the attached module(s) for features and definitions specific to that module.

Data Set
Created using Editor Software authoring tool and then transferred to PC Unit. A data set reflects facility’s best-practice guidelines for IV Drug administration and includes: Profile Drug Libraries, Clinical Advisories, instrument configurations, and Channel Label Libraries.

Guardrails® Suite MX
Designed to help prevent programming errors by:
• Customizing device configurable settings to meet need of selected hospital/facility area/unit (profile).
• Comparing user programming with hospital-defined best-practice guidelines.
• Providing a prompt if an out-of-limits entry is made.

Patient ID Entry
An optional alphanumeric 16-character patient identifier can be entered and displayed.
• When enabled, ID entry defaults to Startup screen.
• When disabled, ID entry is only accessible from System Options screen.

Profile
A unique set of system configuration settings and best-practice guidelines for a specific patient population or patient type, and can consist of following components:
• Instrument configuration settings.
• A Drug Library, which includes Drug names, standard concentrations, dosing units, duration limits, and optional associated Clinical Advisories for both continuous and bolus dose infusion.
• An IV Fluid Library, an optional library consisting of IV fluids (for example, TPN) and limits around rate of delivery.
• A Channel Label Library with text (alphanumeric) labels, which allows identification (on modules) that can be used to indicate route of delivery (for example, epidural).

Profile settings are established by the facility’s own multi-disciplinary team prior to system implementation. Profile parameters are used to create a data set, which is then transferred to the PC Unit.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Features and Definitions (Continued)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Configuration</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow system settings to be customized. If Profiles feature is enabled, system settings defined for selected profile are automatically activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tamper Resist</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provides a quick one-touch lockout of front panel keypad.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Features and Displays (Continued)**

**Operating Features, Controls, Indicators**

- **IUI Connector, Left** *(not visible)*
- **IUI Connector, Right*

**Main Display**

- **Soft Keys**: When pressed, allows selection of options or infusion parameters appearing on Main Display adjacent to soft key.
- **Silence Key**: When pressed during an alarm, silences audio for 2 minutes.
- **Options Key**: When pressed, allows access to available System or Channel Options.
- **Soft Keys** *(see above)*
- **Battery Indicator**: When illuminated, indicates Alaris® System is operating on battery power.
- **Power Indicator**: When illuminated, indicates Alaris® System is connected to an AC power source.
- **Computer Monitor Mode Indicator**: When illuminated, indicates Alaris® System is connected to a server or computer. When blinking, indicates data transfer.
- **Clear Key**: When pressed, clears current selected parameter setting to "0".
- **Module Release Latch**: When pressed, allows module to be removed.
- **System On Key**: When pressed, changes Alaris® System from Standby to Operating mode.
- **Up/Down Arrows**: When pressed, increases or decreases parameter with each key press or scrolls up and down when pressed and held.
- **Enter Key**: When pressed, confirms current parameter entry.
- **Cancel Key**: When pressed, sequentially backs out of current setup sequence.
- **Decimal Key**: When pressed, inserts a decimal point in numeric data.
- **Numeric Keypad**
Features and Displays (Continued)

Operating Features, Controls, Indicators (Continued)

IUI Connector, Right

IUI Connector, Left

Use this bolt to reorient Pole Clamp 90° for attachment to a bed rail instead of a pole.

Primary Audio Speaker

Connector Plug over RJ45 Communication Data Port

Tamper Resist Switch

Option Upgrade Panel

Power Cord Strap
The displays illustrated throughout this document are for illustration purposes only. The display content will vary, depending on configuration settings, hospital-defined data set uploaded using the Guardrails® Suite MX, and many other variables.

### Main Display

#### Title Bar

#### Module Status
- A solid letter display indicates module is operating.
- An outlined letter display indicates module is attached and ready for use.

#### Soft Keys

#### Module Selected Indicator

**"Inactive" Soft Key**
- Nonhighlighted indicates a nonselected soft key.

**"Active" Soft Key**
- Highlighted indicates a selected soft key.

#### Prompt Bar
- Look here for user prompts.
If the configuration settings need to be changed from the "Factory Default" settings, reference the applicable Technical Service Manual or contact Cardinal Health Technical Support, for technical, troubleshooting, and preventive maintenance information.

With the Profiles feature enabled, the settings are configured independently for each profile. A hospital-defined, best-practice data set must be uploaded to enable the Profiles feature. Date and Time is a system setting and is the same in all profiles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alarm Audio</td>
<td>Profile 1</td>
<td>Profile 1, 2 or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthesia Mode</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Meter</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock Setup (Date and Time)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Set date and time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dose Checking</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Always, Smart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Click Audio</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Patient Weight</td>
<td>500 kg</td>
<td>0.1 - 500 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient ID Entry</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM Reminder</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profiles</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamper Resist</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Battery Operation: Battery run time is a function of the number of modules attached and module activity. With a new, fully charged battery, the system will operate as follows before a "BATTERY DISCHARGED" message occurs:

- 8 hours with 1 Pump Module infusing at 25 mL/h
- 6 hours with 1 Pump Module infusing at 25 mL/h and 1 Auto-ID Module
- 4 hours with 4 Pump Modules infusing at 25 mL/h
- 3 hours with 4 Pump Modules infusing at 25 mL/h and 1 Auto-ID Module
- 6 hours with 1 active SpO₂ Module
- 8 hours with 1 Syringe Module or PCA Module infusing at 5 mL/h
- 4 hours with 4 Syringe Modules infusing at 5 mL/h
- 5.5 hours with 1 active EtCO₂ Module

When using the Communications Interface Board Accessory, battery run time may be reduced by 25%.

Communication Data Port: RS-232 with an RJ45 connector.

Dimensions: 6.9”W x 8.8”H x 9”D (including pole clamp)

Electric Classification: Class 1, Internally Powered Equipment

Electronic Memory: System configuration parameters stored in volatile memory are retained for at least 6 months by internal backup lithium battery. Module-specific parameters are stored for 8 hours when system is turned off. After 8 hours of continuous off-time, or if a module is detached, module-specific trend data (if applicable) and module-specific operating parameters are automatically purged. If an Alaris® PCA, SpO₂ or EtCO₂ Module is detached and replaced with another PCA, SpO₂ or EtCO₂ Module, its module-specific trend data is purged.

Environmental Conditions: Operating Storage/Transport

- Temperature Range: 41 - 104°F (-4 - 140°F)
- Relative Humidity: 20 - 90% (Noncondensing)
- Atmospheric Pressure: 525 - 4560 mmHg (700 - 6080 hPa)
- Weight: 7.2 lbs

Equipment Orientation: To ensure proper operation, the instrument must remain in an upright position.

Fluid Ingress Protection: IPX1, Drip Proof

Leakage Current: Less than 100 microamps

Power Requirements: 100 - 240V ~, 50/60 Hz, 150 VA MAX

Specifications and Symbols
NOTES:

1. Reference the product-specific Section of this DFU for shock protection type and defibrillation-proof rating information.

2. Power Cords:
   - North America: To ensure correct polarity and grounding reliability, use power cords that incorporate a NEMA 5-15P (125V) or NEMA 6-15P (250V) plug only.
   - International: Use only cords that comply with IEC 60245, or IEC 60227, designation #53 and local electrical codes and/or regulations.

Symbols

Reference the product-specific Section of this DFU that applies to the attached module(s) for symbols specific to that module.

- Silenced alarm.
- Alternating Current: Indicates device should be attached to alternating current source, 50/60 Hz only.
- Battery power.
- Caution: Refer to accompanying documentation.
- Canadian and U.S. Certification Mark: Products bearing this mark have been tested and certified in accordance with applicable U.S. and Canadian electrical safety and performance standards.
- Communications connector for RS-232 attachment.
- Consult operating instructions.
- Type CF defibrillation-proof equipment.
- Electrostatic discharge (ESD).
Fuse Replacement: Replace fuse only with same type and rating.

**IPX1**
Protection against fluid ingress: Drip Proof

IUI Connector: Inter-Unit Interface connector used to establish power and communications between PC Unit and attached modules.

Main Power: Connected to alternating current, 100-240 VAC.

Manufacturing Date: Number adjacent to symbol indicates month and year of manufacture.

Potential Equalization Conductor (if so equipped). Note: If integrity of PEC or Hospital Earth System is in question, operate instrument using internal battery power.

Radio frequency (RF) radiation.

**Rx Only**
CAUTION: Federal (U.S.A.) law restricts this device to sale by or on order of a physician.

"SYSTEM ON"

Tamper Resist activate/deactivate switch.
General

The Alaris® System Technical Service Manual is available from Cardinal Health. It includes routine service schedules, interconnect diagrams, component parts lists and descriptions, test procedures, and other technical information, to assist qualified service personnel in repair and maintenance of the instrument’s repairable components. Maintenance procedures are intended to be performed only by qualified personnel, using the Service Manual, Maintenance Software and Maintenance Software User Manual.

Alarms, Errors, Messages

To enhance safety and ease of operation, the Alaris® System provides a full range of audio and visual alarms, errors, and messages.

NOTE:

1. Operating the system near equipment which radiates high-energy radio frequencies (electrosurgical/cauterizing equipment, portable radios, cellular telephones, etc.) may cause false alarm conditions. If this happens, reposition the Alaris® System away from the source of interference or turn off the system and manually regulate the flow with the clamp and/or monitor the vital parameters using an appropriate clinical alternative.

Definitions

Reference the product-specific Section of this DFU that applies to the attached module(s) for alarm, error and message definitions specific to that module.

Advisory / Message

A sequence of audio and/or visual signals indicating operating status of Alaris® System.

Alarm

An audio and visual signal that a potentially unsafe condition is present. Immediate action is required.

Alarm Silence

Alarms can be silenced for up to 120 seconds by pressing SILENCE key. Alarm indicators remain on and, if applicable, alarm silence symbol (reference monitoring module Section of this DFU) is displayed. Silence period can be ended by pressing CANCEL SILENCE soft key.
### Definitions (Continued)

**Error**
An audio and/or visual signal that a failure has been detected. Immediate action is required.

**Maintenance Reminder**
A visual message that, when enabled, appears at module startup when scheduled preventive maintenance is due/overdue for any part of Alaris® System (PC Unit or attached module).

**Prompt**
An audio signal and/or a visual message appearing on bottom line of Main Display or in Message Display. Audio signal may be silenced for 12 seconds by pressing **SILENCE** key.

### Audio Characteristics

The Alaris® System provides various types of alert information. Reference the product-specific Section of this DFU that applies to the attached module(s) for audio characteristics specific to that module.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advisory / Message</td>
<td>One short beep every 2 seconds</td>
<td>Variable volume; can be silenced for 2 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm</td>
<td>Choice of 3 alarm audio profiles, selectable in System Configuration</td>
<td>Variable volume; can be silenced for 2 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error (Hardware Detected)</td>
<td>Pairs of long beeps</td>
<td>Fixed maximum decibel volume; cannot be silenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error (Software Detected)</td>
<td>Pairs of long beeps</td>
<td>Fixed maximum decibel volume; can be silenced for 2 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illegal Key Press</td>
<td>Two short beeps</td>
<td>Variable volume; cannot be silenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key Click</td>
<td>One short beep</td>
<td>Fixed minimum volume; can be silenced and disabled in System Configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt</td>
<td>One short beep every 2 seconds</td>
<td>Variable volume; can be silenced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Alarms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery Discharged</td>
<td>Operation of all modules stopped due to insufficient battery charge.</td>
<td>Connect AC power cord to power source; alarm will be silenced. Press <strong>RESTART</strong> key on affected module to continue operation of paused modules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel Disconnected</td>
<td>Module(s) disconnected while in operation or have a communication problem.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and clear message from screen, press <strong>CONFIRM</strong> soft key. Reattach module, if desired, ensuring it is securely &quot;clicked&quot; into place at Module Release Latch. If alarm is still present, replace module with an operational instrument.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very Low Battery &lt;5 minutes to system shutdown</td>
<td>Battery has 5 minutes or less of power at current power consumption rate before operation stops.</td>
<td>Connect AC power cord to power source; alarm will be silenced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Errors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio System Error</td>
<td>Main speaker failure.</td>
<td>1. Visually check alarm status to determine whether or not an operational alarm also needs to be addressed (red Alarm Status Indicator would be lit).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Press <strong>SYSTEM ON</strong> key to power down system. Replace PC Unit with an operational instrument. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel Error</td>
<td>Error detected. Operation stops on affected module.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and continue operation of unaffected modules, press <strong>CONFIRM</strong> soft key. Replace module with an operational instrument, as required. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defective Battery</td>
<td>Defective battery.</td>
<td>To power down system, press <strong>SYSTEM OFF</strong> soft key; or to continue temporary operation while an operational PC Unit can be located, press <strong>SILENCE</strong> key. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware Detected Error</td>
<td>Error detected on PC Unit. Operation stops on all modules.</td>
<td>Press <strong>SYSTEM ON</strong> key to power down system. Replace PC Unit with an operational instrument. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missing Battery</td>
<td>Battery not present or not connected.</td>
<td>To power down system, press <strong>SYSTEM OFF</strong> soft key; or to continue temporary operation while an operational PC Unit can be located, press <strong>SILENCE</strong> key. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Supply Error</td>
<td>Power supply system malfunction.</td>
<td>Disconnect AC power immediately. To power down system, press <strong>SYSTEM OFF</strong> soft key; or to continue operation under battery power while an operational PC Unit can be located, press <strong>SILENCE</strong> key. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Error</td>
<td>Error detected on PC Unit. Operation continues on all attached modules.</td>
<td>To power down system, press <strong>SYSTEM OFF</strong> soft key; or to continue temporary operation while an operational PC Unit can be located, press <strong>SILENCE</strong> key. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Alarms, Errors, Messages (Continued)

Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery Run Time = X.X hours</td>
<td>AC power cord is disconnected from power source. Approximate remaining battery run time under current power consumption rate is displayed.</td>
<td>None. Connect AC power cord to power source as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Battery</td>
<td>Low battery threshold sensed; remaining battery run time is limited.</td>
<td>Connect AC power cord to power source; alarm will be silenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panel Locked</td>
<td>Tamper Resist feature is active and key was pressed.</td>
<td>If appropriate, deactivate Tamper Resist feature using Tamper Resist Control on back of PC Unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panel Unlocked</td>
<td>Tamper Resist feature deactivated.</td>
<td>None.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powering Down</td>
<td>Last module powering off. System shuts off in indicated number of seconds.</td>
<td>Press any key, except SYSTEM ON key, to cancel power down sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace Battery</td>
<td>Occurs at System On. Battery has less than 50% of original capacity.</td>
<td>Press either SYSTEM OFF or CONFIRM soft key to continue normal operation with reduced battery capacity. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Storage

Plug the PC Unit into an AC outlet during storage, to ensure a fully charged battery when needed. AC indicator light (△) will be on whenever the PC Unit is plugged in.
Battery Care and Maintenance

Battery Type and Charging

The PC Unit is equipped with a 12 volt, 4000 mAh nickel metal hydride battery. The battery is charging whenever the instrument is plugged into an AC receptacle. The life expectancy of the battery is dependent on the amount of use, the depth of discharge, and the state of the charge that is maintained. Generally, the battery will have the longest life if the instrument is plugged in and battery use is infrequent. Frequent use of battery power and insufficient battery charge cycles will significantly decrease the life of the battery.

The quality of the battery is also a significant factor in determining battery life and runtime. The battery cannot be repaired and should not be opened. Replace the battery with the same type, size and voltage rating. Use of any other brand may yield poor performance and is not recommended.

Batteries should be charged in a room with a temperature between 50 - 80.6°F (10 - 27°C), to minimize charge time and maximize battery life.

Battery Charge

- The PC Unit is shipped with the battery in a discharged condition.
- Before the PC Unit is released for use, it should be plugged into a hospital grade AC outlet and the battery charged for at least 8 hours. This will ensure proper battery operation when the Alaris® System is first set up for patient use.
- Whenever possible, leave the power cord connected to an external AC power source while operating the instrument.

Battery Care

The battery capacity should be checked at least once every 6 months. Reference the Alaris® System Technical Service Manual for test and replacement procedures.

If the PC Unit is to be stored at temperatures in excess of 86°F (30°C) for 1 or more months, the battery should be removed and placed in an environment of 50 - 86°F (10 - 30°C).
If the batteries are to be stored for more than 1 year, they should be charged at least once per year to prevent leakage and deterioration in performance due to self-discharge.

When the battery is first being put into use, or has been out of use for 1 or more months, it will not have full capacity due to deactivation of reactants.

Restore such batteries to original performance by repeating 1 or 2 cycles of fully charging and fully discharging.

Some temporary reduction in capacity might become apparent if the battery is partially discharged repeatedly. Doing 1 or 2 cycles of full discharge and full charge can restore full performance.

Battery Care and Maintenance (Continued)

Battery Cautions and Disposal

Battery replacement should be performed by qualified service personnel while the instrument is not in use.

CAUTION

Do not open, incinerate or short circuit. Worn–out batteries must be disposed of properly, according to local regulations.

Inspection Requirements

To ensure the system remains in good operating condition, both regular and preventive maintenance inspections are required. Reference the Maintenance Software and User Manual (v8.1 or later) for detailed instructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGULAR INSPECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PROCEDURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSPECT FOR DAMAGE:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pole Clamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keypad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEANING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start-Up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CAUTION

Regular and preventive maintenance inspections should only be performed by qualified service personnel.

WARNING

Failure to perform these inspections may result in improper instrument operation.
GETTING STARTED

INTRODUCTION ................................................................................................................. 2-1
PREPARING ADMINISTRATION SET (PUMP MODULE) ......................................................... 2-3
   Loading ............................................................................................................................. 2-3
   Removing .......................................................................................................................... 2-5
   Priming .............................................................................................................................. 2-5
PREPARING SYRINGE AND ADMINISTRATION SET (SYRINGE MODULE) ......................... 2-6
   Loading ............................................................................................................................. 2-7
   Priming .............................................................................................................................. 2-11

PROGRAMMING

PRIMARY INFUSION - WITH GUARDRAILS® SUITE MX PROTECTION .......................... 2-17
   Continuous Infusion ....................................................................................................... 2-19
   Bolus Dose ...................................................................................................................... 2-26
   Intermittent Infusion ...................................................................................................... 2-32
   IV Fluid Infusion .......................................................................................................... 2-35
SECONDARY INFUSION - WITH GUARDRAILS® SUITE MX PROTECTION (PUMP MODULE) 2-39
   Introduction ................................................................................................................... 2-39
   Setup ............................................................................................................................... 2-39
   Infusion ........................................................................................................................... 2-40
INFUSION - NO GUARDRAILS® SUITE MX PROTECTION .................................................. 2-45
   Basic Infusion ................................................................................................................ 2-45
   Promoting Basic Infusion to Guardrails® Suite MX Protection Infusion ...................... 2-47
   Continuous Infusion - Drug Calculation ...................................................................... 2-47
   Bolus Dose ...................................................................................................................... 2-50
SECONDARY INFUSION - NO GUARDRAILS® SUITE MX PROTECTION (PUMP MODULE) 2-51
   Introduction and Setup ................................................................................................. 2-51
   Infusion ........................................................................................................................... 2-51
VIEWING AND CLEARING VOLUME INFUSED ................................................................... 2-53
CHANNEL LABELS ............................................................................................................... 2-54
   Selecting .......................................................................................................................... 2-54
   Removing ........................................................................................................................ 2-56
ANESTHESIA MODE ............................................................................................................ 2-57
   DELAY OPTIONS ....................................................................................................... 2-57
      Delaying Infusion ...................................................................................................... 2-57
      Scheduling a Callback ............................................................................................ 2-60
      Pausing Infusion ....................................................................................................... 2-61
   MULTIDOSE MODE ..................................................................................................... 2-62
      Volume/Duration Enabled ...................................................................................... 2-64
      Volume/Duration Disabled ..................................................................................... 2-65
SELECTING PRESSURE LIMIT ............................................................................................. 2-66
   Pump Module ............................................................................................................... 2-66
   Syringe Module ............................................................................................................. 2-68

GENERAL SETUP AND OPERATION

SYSTEM START-UP / SETUP ......................................................................................... 2-71
   Setting Up for Gravity Infusion (Pump Module) ................................................................ 2-71
   Changing Solution Container (Pump Module) ................................................................ 2-71
   Changing Syringe During Infusion (Syringe Module) .................................................... 2-72
GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS ................................................................. 2-73
  General .......................................................................................... 2-73
  Administration Sets ..................................................................... 2-74
  Epidural Administration .............................................................. 2-75
  Guardrails® Suite MX .................................................................. 2-76

ADMINISTRATION SET / SYRINGE INFORMATION .............................. 2-77
  SmartSite® Infusion Set (Pump Module) .......................................... 2-78
  Safety Clamp Fitment (Pump Module) ............................................ 2-78
  Compatible Syringes (Syringe Module) .......................................... 2-79

FEATURES AND DISPLAYS ................................................................. 2-80
  Features and Definitions ............................................................... 2-80
  Operating Features, Controls, Indicators ...................................... 2-87
  Displays .......................................................................................... 2-90

DRUG CALCULATION DEFINITIONS AND FORMULAS ..................... 2-91

CONFIGURABLE SETTINGS ............................................................. 2-92
  Shared Infusion ............................................................................. 2-92
  Pump Module ............................................................................... 2-93
  Syringe Module ........................................................................... 2-94

SPECIFICATIONS ............................................................................. 2-95
  Pump Module ............................................................................... 2-95
  Syringe Module ........................................................................... 2-97

SYMBOLS ........................................................................................ 2-101
  Pump and Syringe Modules .......................................................... 2-101
  Pump Module ............................................................................... 2-101

TRUMPET AND START-UP CURVES ............................................... 2-102
  Introduction .................................................................................. 2-102
  Graphs ........................................................................................... 2-105

TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE .................................... 2-109

GENERAL ....................................................................................... 2-109

ALARMS, ERRORS, MESSAGES ...................................................... 2-109
  Definitions .................................................................................... 2-110
  Audio Characteristics .................................................................... 2-110
  Alarms .......................................................................................... 2-110
  Errors ............................................................................................ 2-115
  Messages ....................................................................................... 2-116
  Possible End of Infusion Messages and Alerts ............................. 2-118

INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS ......................................................... 2-118
Introduction

This Section of the Directions for Use (DFU) provides Alaris® Pump Module, 8100 Series ("Pump Module"), and Alaris® Syringe Module, 8110 Series ("Syringe Module") instructions and information. It is used in conjunction with the following:

- Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit ("PC Unit") Section of this DFU
- Alaris® Product Administration Set Instructions
- Maintenance Software and User Manual for Alaris® System
- Drug Product Labeling
- Pump Module Set Compatibility Card
- Syringe Module Set Compatibility Card
- Pump Module Technical Service Manual
- Syringe Module Technical Service Manual

The Pump and Syringe Modules are intended for facilities that utilize infusion and/or syringe pumps for the delivery of fluids, medications, blood, and blood products using continuous or intermittent delivery through clinically acceptable routes of administration; such as, intravenous (IV), intra-arterial (IA), subcutaneous, epidural, enteral, or irrigation of fluid spaces. The Pump and Syringe Modules are indicated for use on adults, pediatrics, and neonates.

The Syringe Module uses standard, single-use, disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and administration sets, designed for use on syringe pumps. For specific administration set instructions, reference the directions for use provided with the set.

If a procedure/information applies to a specific module, the following identifiers will indicate the module it applies to.

**Pump Module:**

**Syringe Module:**
Introduction (Continued)

Administration Sets / Syringes: Reference "General Information" for specific "Administration Set / Syringe Information".

Alarms, Errors, Messages: Reference "Troubleshooting and Maintenance" for module-specific alarms, errors and messages.

Contraindications: None known.

Electromagnetic Environment: Reference "Appendix" Section of this DFU ("Regulations and Standards", Compliance").
Preparing Administration Set (Pump Module)

For instructions on how to go from checking in a Pump Module to preparing it for an infusion setup, reference "General Setup and Operation".

Loading

1. If a new set is being loaded, prime set (reference "Priming" procedure).
2. Open Pump Module door.
3. Load administration set, as follows:
   a. Hold upper fitment above fitment recess and lower into recess.
   b. Ensure tubing is not twisted.

WARNINGS

• To prevent a potential free-flow condition, ensure no extraneous object (for example, bedding, tubing, glove) is enclosed or caught in the Pump Module door.

• Administration Sets:
  - Use only Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System administration sets. The use of any other set may cause improper instrument operation, resulting in an inaccurate fluid delivery or other potential hazard. For a list of compatible sets, reference the Set Compatibility Card (provided separately).
  - Discard if packaging is not intact or protector caps are unattached.

CAUTIONS

• Before operating instrument, verify that administration set is free from kinks and installed correctly in instrument.
• Insert upper fitment before installing safety clamp fitment.
• When reloading an administration set, leave the safety clamp fitment in the closed position (reference "General Information", "Safety Clamp Fitment").
4. Close door and latch, as follows:
   a. Close door and hold in a closed position by grasping door and instrument case with one hand.
   b. Gently lower latch.
      • Safety clamp device is automatically disengaged.
   c. Press safety clamp fitment into recess below mechanism.

5. Open roller clamp.

6. Verify no fluid is flowing through drip chamber.

**CAUTION**

To reduce the potential for nuisance AIL alarms, ensure tubing is fully inserted in AIL Detector.

**WARNINGS**

- Do not touch the administration set while closing the door. Failure to follow this instruction may result in infusion rate inaccuracy.
- To prevent a potential free-flow condition, ensure no extraneous object (for example, bedding, tubing, glove) is enclosed or caught in the Pump Module door.
Removing

1. Close roller clamp.
2. Open Pump Module door.
   - Set's safety clamp fitment automatically closes to prevent accidental free-flow.

3. Remove set, as follows:
   a. Gently pull tubing below Air-in-Line Detector forward and out.
   b. Lift upper fitment from upper fitment receptacle.

4. If set is being removed to begin a gravity flow:
   a. Depress blue ridged release tab on upper side of safety clamp device.
   b. Slide white slide clamp into blue fitment (open position).
   c. Adjust flow rate using set's roller clamp.

Priming

1. Prepare primary solution container in accordance with manufacturer's directions for use.
2. Open administration set package, remove set, and close roller clamp. (Reference set's directions for use.)
3. Insert administration set spike into prepared fluid container, following accepted hospital/facility procedure, and hang container 20 inches above Pump Module.
4. Fill drip chamber to 2/3 full.
5. If container requires venting, open vent cap on administration set spike.
Preparing Administration Set  (Pump Module) (Continued)

6. To prime tubing and clear air from injection sites and tubing fitments, slowly open roller clamp.
7. When priming is complete, close roller clamp.
8. Verify no fluid flow.

Preparing Syringe and Administration Set  (Syringe Module)

For instructions on how to go from checking in a Syringe Module to preparing it for an infusion setup, reference "General Setup and Operation".

1. Prepare syringe (reference "General Information", "Compatible Syringes") in accordance with manufacturer’s directions for use.
2. Prepare administration set (reference Set Compatibility Card, provided separately) in accordance with manufacturer’s directions for use.
3. Attach upper fitting of administration set to syringe tip.

WARNING
Use only standard, single-use, disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and administration sets, designed for use on syringe pumps. The use of any other syringe or administration set may cause improper instrument operation, resulting in inaccurate fluid delivery or pressure sensing, or other potential hazards. For a list of compatible syringes, reference "General Information", "Compatible Syringes". For a list of compatible administration sets, reference the Set Compatibility Card (provided separately).
When initially loading the syringe, allow for the volume of fluid contained in the administration set and retained in the syringe at the end of an infusion, as this "dead space" will not be infused.

1. Open syringe barrel clamp.
   a. Pull syringe barrel clamp out and hold.
   b. Rotate clamp to left (clockwise or counter clockwise) until it clears syringe chamber.
   c. Gently release clamp.

### WARNINGS

- **Before loading** the syringe, check it for damage or defects.
- Ensure syringe barrel, flange, and plunger are installed and secured correctly. Failure to install syringe correctly can result in uncontrolled fluid flow to the patient, and may cause serious injury or death.
- **Before loading or unloading** the syringe, always turn off fluid flow to the patient, using the tubing clamp or stopcock. Uncontrolled fluid flow can occur when the administration set is not clamped or turned off, and may cause serious injury or death.

### CAUTION

When initially loading the syringe, allow for the volume of fluid contained in the administration set and retained in the syringe at the end of an infusion, as this "dead space" will not be infused.
Loading (Continued)

2. Raise drive head to its fully extended position.
   a. Twist gripper control clockwise and hold in position.
   b. While holding gripper control in open position, raise drive head to full extension.
   c. Gently release gripper control.

3. Insert syringe (from front of instrument) by sliding flat edge of syringe barrel flange between barrel flange grippers.

4. Lock syringe in place.
   a. Pull syringe barrel clamp out and hold.
   b. Rotate clamp to right (clockwise or counter clockwise) until it lines up with syringe.
   c. Gently release clamp against syringe.
5. Lower drive head and lock plunger in place with plunger grippers.
   a. Twist gripper control clockwise and hold in position.
   b. While holding gripper control in open position, gently lower drive head until it makes contact with plunger flange.
   c. Gently release gripper control.
   d. Ensure plunger grippers lock and hold plunger in place.

6. Insert pressure sensing disc (if used), as follows:

---

**CAUTIONS**

- To avoid an occlusion when loading a smaller size syringe, use extra care to close off administration set tubing and gently lower drive head against syringe plunger.
- For smaller syringes (such as; 1, 3, or 5 cc), stabilize the syringe plunger with thumb and index finger while carefully lowering the drive head. Ensure the syringe plunger head makes contact with the small black sensor, located on the bottom of the drive head (between the plunger grippers).

---

**WARNING**

When the pressure sensing disc is not being used and an occlusion occurs, there is a risk of infusing pressurized buildup of infusates upon correction of the occlusion. To avoid an inadvertent bolus, relieve the pressure before restarting the infusion.
Loading (Continued)

a. Orient pressure sensing disc, as follows:
   • fluid side up (patient side down)
   • cavity forward (membrane toward instrument)

b. Gently slide pressure sensing disc up into slot in pressure sensing disc housing.

c. Apply firm upward pressure on pressure sensing disc (not tubing) until disc snaps into place.

NOTES:

① The gripper control is spring loaded. When twisted to the open position and then released, it (and the plunger grippers) will return to the closed position.

② The following are special Syringe Module features available only with extension sets fitted with a pressure sensing disc:
   (Reference “General Information”, “Features and Displays” for definitions.)
   
   Auto Pressure
   Back Off (upon occlusion)
   Customizable Pressure Alarm Settings (see "Occlusion Pressure" feature definition)
   Dynamic Pressure Display (see "Pressure Tracking" feature definition)
   Fast Start
The Priming option can be enabled at the time the Alaris® System is configured for use. The Priming selection (PRIME soft key) is available only after the syringe and infusion type have been selected, and prior to beginning an infusion.

If a pressure sensing disc is in use, it must be removed from the instrument before priming. Reference the applicable procedure (as follows) depending on whether or not a pressure sensing disc is used.

**WARNING**

**When priming:**
- Ensure patient is not connected.
- Ensure air is expelled from line prior to beginning infusion (unexpelled air in line could have serious consequences).

Failure to prime correctly can delay infusion delivery and cause the total volume to be infused to read higher than the actual total delivered to the patient.

**CAUTION**

**During priming,** the pressure limit alarms are temporarily increased to their maximum level.

**Pressure Sensing Disc Installed**

1. Remove pressure sensing disc from instrument.
   - Using a finger, apply firm downward pressure on pressure sensing disc (not tubing) until disc snaps loose from slot in pressure sensing disc housing.

**CAUTION**

The pressure sensing disc, if left installed during priming, can trap air that may not be totally expelled. To ensure entrapped air is eliminated, it is recommended that the pressure sensing disc be removed prior to priming and the membrane massaged with a finger while priming. After priming is completed, reinstall the pressure sensing disc.
2. Press OPTIONS key.

3. Press **Prime Set with Syringe** soft key.

- If pressure sensing disc was not removed prior to pressing **Prime Set with Syringe** soft key, a pressure sensing disc removal prompt displays.
Preparation of Syringe and Administration Set (Syringe Module) (Continued)

**Pressure Sensing Disc Installed** (Continued)

4. Prime, as follows:
   a. Orient pressure sensing disc with patient side up.
   b. Depress and hold pressure sensing disc between 2 fingers.
   c. Press and hold PRIME soft key until fluid flows and priming of syringe administration set is complete.
   d. Release pressure sensing disc.

5. When priming is complete, release PRIME soft key.
6. Reinstall pressure sensing disc, as follows:
   a. Orient pressure sensing disc, as follows:
      • fluid side up (patient side down)
      • cavity forward (membrane toward instrument)
   b. Gently slide pressure sensing disc up into slot in pressure sensing disc housing.
   c. Apply firm upward pressure on pressure sensing disc (not tubing) until disc snaps into place.

7. To return to main screen, press EXIT soft key.
   • If EXIT soft key is pressed before pressure sensing disc is reinstalled, a prompt to reinstall pressure sensing disc displays.
**Preparation and Administration Set (Syringe Module) (Continued)**

### Priming (continued)

**Pressure Sensing Disc Not Installed**

1. Press **OPTIONS** key.
2. Press **Prime Set with Syringe** soft key.

3. Press and hold **PRIME** soft key until fluid flows and priming of syringe administration set is complete.
4. When priming is complete, release **PRIME** soft key.
5. To return to main screen, press **EXIT** soft key.

**NOTES:**

① When manually priming (per hospital/facility protocol) and an administration set having a pressure sensing disc is in use, depress the disc between 2 fingers while priming and prime uphill (distal end of pressure sensing disc/tubing pointing upward).

② Fluid is delivered during priming only while the **PRIME** soft key is pressed. Each press of the **PRIME** soft key delivers up to 2 mL of priming fluid per continuous press. To deliver additional amounts, press the **PRIME** soft key again.

③ Volume used during priming is displayed but not added to VTBI.
Programming

References throughout this procedure to specific drugs and drug doses are for illustration purposes only. Refer to specific drug product labeling for information concerning appropriate administration techniques and dosages.

Reference "General Information", "Features and Displays" and the PC Unit Section of this DFU for information on the following:

• Displays
• Operating Features, Controls, Indicators

The majority of user interface programming is identical for both the Pump Module and Syringe Module. When referring to both modules, the term "infusion modules" will be used.

Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection

The following procedures are to be used only when the drug to be infused is listed in the Guardrails® Drug Library. To access the Guardrails® Drug Library, a hospital-defined best-practice data set must be transferred using Guardrails® Editor Software and the Profiles feature must be enabled.

1. Perform following steps (reference PC Unit Section of this DFU, "General Setup and Operation", "Start-Up"):
   a. Power on system.
   b. Choose Yes or No to New Patient?
   c. Confirm current profile or select a new profile.
   d. Enter patient identifier, if required.

2. Prepare and load syringe/administration set (reference "Getting Started").

3. Prime (reference "Getting Started").

**WARNING**

When the pressure sensing disc is not being used and an occlusion occurs, there is a risk of infusing pressurized buildup of infusates upon correction of the occlusion. To avoid an inadvertent bolus, relieve the pressure before restarting the infusion.
4. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.

5. If a Syringe Module is being programmed, select syringe type and size, as follows; otherwise, proceed to step 6.①

   a. Press soft key next to installed syringe type and size. If a default syringe list has been enabled and correct syringe cannot be found, press ALL SYRINGES soft key.

   WARNING

   Ensure the displayed syringe manufacturer and syringe size correctly identify the installed syringe. Mismatches may cause an under-infusion or over-infusion to the patient that could result in serious injury and/or death. For a list of compatible syringes, reference "General Information", "Compatible Syringes". If the installed syringe is displayed and selected, but is not recognized, servicing is required (reference "Maintenance", "Service Information" in "Appendix" Section of this DFU).
6. Start applicable infusion, as described in following procedures:

- Continuous Infusion
- Bolus Dose
- Intermittent Infusion
- IV Fluid Infusion

**NOTE:**

1. At the start of a Syringe Module infusion program, the system prompts to select and confirm the syringe type and size. The system automatically detects the syringe size, and lists syringe types and sizes that most closely match the installed syringe. If the syringe is not recognized, **Syringe not recognized** displays.

**Continuous Infusion**

When using a drug listed in the Guardrails® Drug Library, the drug parameters are automatically calculated, based on:

- drug selected
- weight entry (if required)
- rate or dose entry
- VTBI entry (Syringe Module: if other than All)
1. Press **Guardrails Drugs** soft key.

2. Press soft key next to desired drug.①

- If applicable, an optional hospital-defined therapy or clinical indication for delivery of this infusion may appear (as in illustrated example, which reflects use of Alteplase). Different limits can be defined for same drug with different therapeutic indications.

-- Continued on Next Page --
• If applicable, a weight-based, nonweight-based, or BSA-based option for delivery of this infusion may appear (as in illustrated example, which reflects use of Heparin).

• If applicable, multiple concentration listings for delivery of this infusion may appear (as in illustrated example, which reflects use of Dopamine).

3. To continue programming, press Yes soft key.
   • Bolus dose units appear if Bolus Dose is enabled.
   OR
   To change selection, press No soft key.

-- Continued on Next Page --
**Continuous Infusion (Continued)**

- If Yes was selected and facility has defined a Guardrails® Clinical Advisory ("Clinical Advisory") for that drug, a message appears. To indicate information has been noted and continue programming, press **CONFIRM** soft key.

- If Yes was selected to continue programming, drug amount and diluent volume (if defined in Drug Library) are automatically entered for selected drug.

- If selected drug had "__ / __ mL" concentration, drug amount and diluent volume need to be entered.

- If selected drug is not weight-based, **Not Used** displays in **PATIENT WEIGHT** field.

- If hospital/facility practice guidelines identify selected drug as weight-based, prompt for a patient weight in kilograms appears (as in illustrated example, which reflects use of Alteplase).

4. Verify parameters are correct and press **NEXT** soft key to confirm.
   - Syringe Module: If ALL Mode is enabled, **VTBI ALL** displays.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DRUG LIBRARY</th>
<th>NEXT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DRUG AMOUNT</td>
<td>100 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DILUENT VOLUME</td>
<td>100 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME UNITS</td>
<td>hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOSING UNITS</td>
<td>mg/kg/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Conc]: 1 mg/mL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Guardrails Clinical Advisory**
- This dosing is for Acute Ischemic STROKE
- >Press CONFIRM

**Guardrails Drug Setup Alteplase**
- >Press NEXT to Confirm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHANNEL SELECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHANNEL OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTART</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAUSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RATE (mL/h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection (Continued)**

4. Verify parameters are correct and press **NEXT** soft key to confirm.
   - Syringe Module: If ALL Mode is enabled, **VTBI ALL** displays.
5. An optional hospital-defined and editable starting value for continuous infusion dose may already be entered.

   OR

To make a rate or dose entry, press applicable soft key, RATE or DOSE, and use numeric data entry keys (other value is calculated and displayed).

6. To enter volume to be infused, press VTBI soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

   • BOLUS soft key appears only if Bolus Dose is enabled within selected profile, drug is bolusable, and a VTBI is entered.
   
   • Syringe Module: When VTBI equals ALL, ALL soft key appears inactive when VTBI soft key is pressed and active when a value is entered.

7. Verify parameters are correct and press START soft key.

-- Continued on Next Page --
Continuous Infusion (Continued)

- If programmed continuous dose infusion is outside Guardrails® Soft Limit ("Soft Limit") for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if No soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

- If programmed continuous dose infusion is outside Guardrails® Hard Limit ("Hard Limit") for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

- If a dose outside of Soft Limits has been entered and verified as correct, Message Display also shows either "LLL" for a low dose or "↑↑↑" for a high dose.

Pausing and Restarting Infusion®

1. Press PAUSE key.
   - PAUSE scrolls in Message Display.
   - PAUSED appears on Main Display.
   - Yellow Standby Status Indicator illuminates.
   - After 2 minutes, PAUSE-RESTART CHANNEL visual and audio prompts begin, and yellow Standby Status Indicator flashes.
Pausing and Restarting Infusion

2. To reinitiate infusion:
   • Press **RESTART** key.
   OR
   • Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key and then press **START** soft key.

Restoring Infusion

1. To restart infusion using stored parameters, press **RESTORE** soft key.
2. Verify parameters are valid and press **START** soft key.

NOTES:

1. To view additional drugs/concentrations, press a soft key next to a letter group to navigate through alphabet, and/or **PAGE UP** and **PAGE DOWN** soft keys.
2. The facility may choose to prepopulate standard drug concentrations, or leave an open entry (___/___ mL) and allow the clinician to enter the desired concentration.
3. Once a patient weight is entered, for any module, it is automatically entered for any subsequent weight-based calculation.
4. Pump Module: At rates less than 10 mL/h, the rate is displayed to 2 decimal places, and the VTBI can be entered and is displayed to 2 decimal places.
5. Pump Module: In the Drug Calculation mode, the system infuses at the calculated rate rounded to the nearest one-hundredth of a mL per hour (as displayed on programming screen). The rate shown in the Rate Display will be rounded to the nearest one-tenth of a mL per hour.
6. The Pump Module keypad is used in the illustrations but the keys are the same for the Syringe Module.
Bolus Dose

A bolus dose can be programmed at the beginning of, or during, an infusion. The drug being programmed must be a bolusable drug selected from the Guardrails® Drug Library or a non-library drug, as described in the following procedures.

1. Set up infusion as described in "Continuous Infusion" procedure, but do not start infusion.
2. Press BOLUS soft key.
   - If programmed continuous dose infusion is outside Soft Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if No soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
   - If programmed continuous dose infusion is outside Hard Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

Changing Rate or VTBI During Infusion

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. Press either RATE or VTBI soft key.
3. To enter desired parameter, use up/down arrows for rate titration, or numeric data entry keys.
4. Verify correct infusion parameter entry and press START soft key.
Bolus Dose (Continued)

3. An optional hospital-defined and editable starting value for bolus dose and/or bolus rate duration may already be entered.

   OR

   To enter bolus dose, use numeric data entry keys.

   • After a bolus dose and weight (if used) are entered, bolus VTBI and concentration [conc] alternate in Main Display.

   • If no weight has previously been programmed in system and bolus dose is weight-based, weight entry is empty.

   • If programmed continuous dose is weight-based, programmed weight displays.

   • If bolus dose is not weight-based, Not Used displays in PATIENT WEIGHT field.

4. To enter or change patient weight (if used), use applicable following procedure, depending on whether or not continuous dose is weight-based.

   • To enter a weight when continuous dose is not weight-based:
     a. Press PATIENT WEIGHT soft key.
     b. To enter patient weight, use numeric data entry keys.

   OR

   • To change weight when continuous dose is weight-based:
     a. Press SETUP soft key.
     b. Press PATIENT WEIGHT soft key.
     c. To change patient weight, use numeric data entry keys.

   -- Continued on Next Page --
Bolus Dose (Continued)

- When continuous dose is weight-based: (Continued)

  d. Press NEXT soft key.
  - If a continuous infusion is running, a prompt to confirm weight change appears.

  e. Press BOLUS soft key.
  
  f. To enter bolus dose, use numeric data entry keys.

5. Press DURATION soft key.

6. To enter bolus duration, use numeric data entry keys.

   OR

To deliver bolus dose at maximum safe rate possible for selected drug and setup, and automatically calculate bolus duration, press Rapid Bolus soft key.

- TOTAL DOSE alternates with INFUSE AT rate.
Bolus Dose (Continued)

7. Verify parameters are correct and press START soft key.
   - If programmed bolus dose and/or bolus dose duration is outside Soft Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if No soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
   - If programmed bolus dose and/or bolus dose duration is outside Hard Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
   - If a bolus dose outside of Soft Limits has been entered and verified as correct, Message Display also shows either "LLL" for a low dose or "↑↑↑" for a high dose.

Stopping Bolus Dose

The display examples in this procedure represent stopping a bolus dose which was programmed using the Drug Library. Even where the displays are different when stopping a bolus dose which was programmed using a non-library drug, the procedure is the same.

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. Press STOP BOLUS soft key.
A bolus dose can be restored after it has completed, either prior to or after the module has been turned off, as indicated in the following procedures.

The display examples in this procedure represent restoring a bolus dose which was programmed using the Drug Library. Even where the displays are different when restoring a bolus dose which was programmed using a non-library drug, the procedure is the same.

1. Bolus dose completed - module not turned off:
   a. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
   b. Verify infusion parameters and press BOLUS soft key.

3. To stop bolus and start continuous infusion, press Yes soft key.

4. To stop continuous infusion, press and hold CHANNEL OFF key until a beep is heard (approximately 1.5 seconds).

Restoring Bolus Dose

A bolus dose can be restored after it has completed, either prior to or after the module has been turned off, as indicated in the following procedures.

The display examples in this procedure represent restoring a bolus dose which was programmed using the Drug Library. Even where the displays are different when restoring a bolus dose which was programmed using a non-library drug, the procedure is the same.

1. Bolus dose completed - module not turned off:
   a. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
   b. Verify infusion parameters and press BOLUS soft key.
Bolus Dose (Continued)

Restoring Bolus Dose (Continued)

c. Press RESTORE soft key.
d. Verify dosing parameters and press START soft key.

2. Bolus dose completed - module turned off:
   a. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
   b. Press RESTORE soft key.
   c. Verify parameters and press NEXT soft key.
   d. Verify infusion parameters and press BOLUS soft key.
   e. Press RESTORE soft key.
   f. Verify dosing parameters and press START soft key.

NOTES:

1. If the Bolus Dose feature is enabled, the BOLUS soft key appears in the Continuous Infusion screen and becomes active when a VTBI is entered.

2. The bolus VTBI cannot exceed the programmed continuous infusion VTBI.

3. Programming and starting a bolus dose deletes any programmed delay.

4. If no continuous rate is entered, the infusion will end when the bolus has been delivered. No KVO infusion will follow.

5. To see details during the bolus infusion, press the CHANNEL SELECT key.

6. The Pump Module keypad is used in the illustration but the key is the same for the Syringe Module.
When using a drug listed in the Guardrails® Drug Library, the drug parameters are automatically delivered, based on:

- drug selected
- weight or body surface area (BSA) entry (if required)
- dose entry
- rate or duration dose entry
- VTBI entry

1. Press Guardrails Drugs soft key.

2. Press soft key next to desired drug. 
   - If applicable, an optional hospital-defined therapy or clinical indication for delivery of this infusion may appear. Different limits can be defined for same drug with different therapeutic indications.
   - If applicable, a weight-based, nonweight-based, or BSA-based option for delivery of this infusion may appear.
   - If applicable, multiple concentration listings for delivery of this infusion may appear.

3. To continue programming, press Yes soft key. OR
   To change selection, press No soft key.
   - If Yes was selected and facility has defined a Clinical Advisory for that drug, a message appears. To indicate information has been noted and continue programming, press CONFIRM soft key.
   - If Yes was selected to continue programming, drug amount and diluent volume (if defined in Drug Library) are automatically entered for selected drug.
   - If selected drug had "_ _ / _ _ mL" concentration, drug amount and diluent volume need to be entered.
   - If selected drug is not weight-based, Not Used displays in PATIENT WEIGHT field.

   -- Continued on Next Page --
4. Verify parameters are correct and press NEXT soft key to confirm.

   • If programmed total dose drug amount is outside Soft Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if No soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

   • If programmed total dose drug amount is outside Hard Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

   • If a dose outside of Soft Limits has been entered and verified as correct, Message Display also shows either "LLL" for a low dose or "↑↑↑" for a high dose.

5. To enter volume to be infused, press VTBI soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

   • Syringe Module: When VTBI equals ALL, ALL soft key appears inactive when VTBI soft key is pressed and active when a value is entered.
Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection (Continued)

Intermittent Infusion (Continued)

6. If an optional hospital-defined and editable starting value for intermittent duration is not already entered, enter duration or rate, as follows:

   • To enter duration, press DURATION soft key and use numeric data entry keys (rate value is calculated and displayed).

   • To enter rate, press RATE VOLUME soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

7. Verify parameters are correct and press START soft key.

   • If programmed duration is outside Soft Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if No soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

   • If programmed duration is outside Hard Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

Pausing, Restarting, Restoring Infusion

Reference "Continuous Infusion" procedure.

Changing Rate or VTBI During Infusion

Reference "Continuous Infusion" procedure.
Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection (Continued)

NOTES:
① To view additional drugs, press a soft key next to a letter group to navigate through alphabet, and/or PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN soft keys.
② The facility may choose to prepopulate standard drug concentrations, or leave an open entry (__, __ mL) and allow the clinician to enter the desired concentration.
③ Once a patient weight or BSA is entered, for any module, it is automatically entered for any subsequent weight-based calculation.
④ Pump Module: At rates less than 10 mL/h, the rate is displayed to 2 decimal places, and the VTBI can be entered and is displayed to 2 decimal places.

Intermittent Infusion (Continued)

IV Fluid Infusion

1. Press Guardrails IV Fluids soft key.
2. Press soft key next to IV Fluid to be delivered.

3. To confirm selection, press Yes soft key.

    OR

To return to IV Fluid library list, press No soft key.

• If Yes was selected and facility has defined a Clinical Advisory for that drug, a message appears. To indicate information has been noted and continue programming, press CONFIRM soft key.
4. Start applicable infusion, as described in following procedures:

   Rate/Volume Infusion
   Volume/Duration Infusion

**Rate/Volume Infusion**

1. To enter flow rate, press **RATE** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

2. To enter **VTBI** (Syringe Module: instead of infusing **ALL**), press **VTBI** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

   OR

   Syringe Module: To deliver entire contents of syringe, leave **VTBI** as **ALL**.

3. Verify correct infusion parameter entry and press **START** soft key.

   • If programmed IV Fluid is outside Soft Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If **Yes** soft key is pressed, programming continues; if **No** soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

   • If programmed IV Fluid is outside Hard Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
Volume/Duration Infusion

1. Press **VOLUME DURATION** soft key.
2. To enter **VTBI** (Syringe Module: instead of infusing **ALL**), press **VTBI** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

   **OR**
   
   Syringe Module: To deliver entire contents of syringe, leave **VTBI** as **ALL**.

3. To enter volume duration, press **DURATION** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
   - Rate is automatically calculated.

4. Verify correct infusion parameter entry and press **START** soft key.
   - If programmed IV Fluid is outside Soft Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If **Yes** soft key is pressed, programming continues; if **No** soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
   - If programmed IV Fluid is outside Hard Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
NOTES:

① Syringe Module: When ALL MODE is disabled, the VTBI ALL option is not available.

② The infusion may be paused by pressing the PAUSE soft key. Reference "Continuous Infusion", "Pausing and Restarting Infusion" procedure.

③ To view infusion Time Left during a volume/duration infusion, press CHANNEL SELECT key. To return to previous screen, press START soft key.

Pausing, Restarting, Restoring Infusion

Reference "Continuous Infusion" procedure.

Changing Rate or VTBI During Infusion

Reference "Continuous Infusion" procedure.
This mode is designed to support automatic secondary infusions ("piggybacking") in the same instrument. A secondary infusion can be programmed as a "Basic Infusion" or "Drug Library Infusion". When the secondary VTBI reaches zero, an audio tone will sound (if enabled) indicating completion of the secondary infusion. The primary infusion resumes automatically.

When the instrument is programmed and delivering in the secondary mode, the primary infusion is temporarily stopped and fluid is drawn from the secondary container. Delivery from the primary container resumes when the fluid level in the secondary line is level with the fluid in the primary container.

**WARNINGS**

- Secondary applications require the use of a check valve set on the primary IV line.
- The secondary solution container must be higher than the primary solution container.
- The secondary VTBI settings require consideration of such variables as factory overfill, medication additions, etc. Underestimating the volume will cause the remaining secondary solution to be infused at the primary rate; overestimating will result in the primary solution being infused at the secondary rate. Multiple doses from a single container are not possible.
- The clamp on the secondary administration set must be opened. If the clamp is not opened, the fluid will be delivered from the primary container.
- The secondary administration set must be primed prior to beginning the secondary infusion.

**Setup**

1. Open secondary administration set package, remove set and close clamp.
2. Insert administration set spike into prepared fluid container and hang secondary container, following accepted hospital/facility procedure.
3. Fill drip chamber to 2/3 full.
5. Attach secondary administration set to upper injection site on primary set.
Secondary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection  
(Pump Module)  (Continued)

Setup (Continued)

6. Using hanger provided with secondary administration set, lower primary fluid container until bottom of secondary container is at least 9½" above fluid level in primary container.

Infusion

The following procedure should be used only when:

- drug to be infused is listed in Guardrails® Drug Library,
- primary infusion is running, and
- a check valve administration set is being used.

To program a primary infusion, reference “IV Fluid Infusion” procedure. To program a basic infusion, reference "Infusion - NO Guardrails® Suite MX Protection" procedure.

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. Press SECONDARY soft key.

3. Press soft key next to desired drug.
   - If applicable, an optional hospital-defined therapy or clinical indication for delivery of this infusion may appear. Different limits can be defined for same drug with different therapeutic indications.
   - If applicable, a weight-based, nonweight-based, or BSA-based option for delivery of this infusion may appear.
   - If applicable, multiple concentration listings for delivery of this infusion may appear.

4. To continue programming, press Yes soft key.
   OR
   To change selection, press No soft key.
   - If Yes was selected and facility has defined a Clinical Advisory for that drug, a message appears. To indicate information has been noted and continue programming, press CONFIRM soft key.
   - If Yes was selected to continue programming, drug amount and diluent volume (if defined in Drug Library) are automatically entered for selected drug.
   - If selected drug had "__/__ mL" concentration, drug amount and diluent volume need to be entered.

-- Continued on Next Page --
5. Verify parameters are correct and press NEXT soft key to confirm.
   • If programmed total dose drug amount is outside Soft Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if No soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
   • If programmed total dose drug amount is outside Hard Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
   • If a dose outside of Soft Limits has been entered and verified as correct, Message Display also shows either "LLL" for a low dose or "↑↑↑" for a high dose.

6. To enter secondary infusion VTBI, press VTBI soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
Infusion (Continued)

7. If an optional hospital-defined and editable starting value for intermittent duration is not already entered, enter duration or rate, as follows:
   - To enter duration, press **DURATION** soft key and use numeric data entry keys (rate value is calculated and displayed).
   - To enter rate, press **RATE VOLUME** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

8. Verify parameters are correct and press **START** soft key.
   - If programmed duration is outside Soft Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If **Yes** soft key is pressed, programming continues; if **No** soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
   - If programmed duration is outside Hard Limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

Pausing, Restarting, Restoring Infusion

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "Continuous Infusion" procedure.

Changing Rate or VTBI During Infusion

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "Continuous Infusion" procedure.
Secondary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection (Pump Module) (Continued)

Infusion (Continued)

Stopping Secondary and Returning to Primary

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. Press SETUP soft key.
3. Press PRIMARY soft key.
   OR
   Disconnect secondary administration set from upper injection port.
5. Press START soft key.
6. To stop secondary infusion and begin infusing primary, press Yes soft key.⁵
   • Secondary infusion stops and primary infusion begins.
   • Main screen appears.

NOTES:
① To view additional drugs, press a soft key next to a letter group to navigate through alphabet, and/or PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN soft keys.
② The facility may choose to prepopulate standard drug concentrations, or leave an open entry (_ _ / _ _ mL) and allow the clinician to enter the desired concentration.
③ Once a patient weight or BSA is entered, for any module, it is automatically entered for any subsequent weight-based calculation.
④ At rates less than 10 mL/h, the rate is displayed to 2 decimal places, and the VTBI can be entered and is displayed to 2 decimal places.
⑤ The SEC to PRI alert does not sound when the infusion is manually ended and returned to primary.
The following procedures should be used only when the drug to be infused is not listed in the Drug Library. When programming a drug not listed in the Drug Library, the drug calculation must be programmed using the **DRUG CALC** soft key within the Drug Library. There are no limits associated with any non-library drug calculation.

1. Perform following steps (reference PC Unit Section of this DFU, "General Setup and Operation", "Start-Up"):
   a. Power on system.
   b. Choose **Yes** or **No** to **New Patient**?
   c. Confirm current profile or select a new profile.
   d. Enter patient identifier, if required.

2. Prepare and load syringe/administration set (reference "Getting Started").

3. Prime (reference "Getting Started").

4. Start applicable infusion, as described in following procedures:
   - Basic Infusion
   - Continuous Infusion - Drug Calculation
   - Bolus Dose

---

### Basic Infusion

The following procedures should be used only to set up a **Basic Infusion**. To program an infusion using **Guardrails Drugs**, reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails Suite MX Protection".

The illustrations in this procedure assume the following:

- **ALL Mode** (Syringe Module), Drug Calculation, Dynamic Pressure Display, Profiles, and Volume Duration configurable settings are enabled.
- **NEO1** (Syringe Module) and Delay Options configurable settings are disabled.

1. Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key.

---

**WARNING**

When the pressure sensing disc is not being used and an occlusion occurs, there is a risk of infusing pressurized buildup of infusates upon correction of the occlusion. To avoid an inadvertent bolus, relieve the pressure before restarting the infusion.
2. Press **Basic Infusion** soft key.
   - **Infusion Setup** screen appears.

3. Start applicable infusion, as described in following procedures.
   - **Rate/Volume Infusion**
   - **Volume/Duration Infusion**

### Rate/Volume Infusion

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "IV Fluid Infusion" procedure.

### Volume/Duration Infusion

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "IV Fluid Infusion" procedure.

### Pausing, Restarting, Restoring Infusion

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "Continuous Infusion" procedure.

### Changing Rate or VTBI During Infusion

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "Continuous Infusion" procedure.

**NOTE:**

1. If Delay Options is enabled, the **PAUSE** soft key becomes **DELAY OPTIONS**.
Infusion - NO Guardrails® Suite MX Protection  (Continued)

Promoting Basic Infusion to Guardrails® Suite MX Protection Infusion

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key on module running infusion to be promoted.
2. Press OPTIONS key.

3. Press Guardrails Drugs soft key.
4. Continue programming (reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection").

Continuous Infusion - Drug Calculation

Drug Calculation

1. Press Guardrails Drugs soft key.
2. Press DRUG CALC soft key.

3. To enter DRUG AMOUNT in syringe, use numeric data entry keys.
4. Press soft key for appropriate unit of measure for drug amount.
5. To enter diluent volume, use numeric data entry keys.

6. Press **PATIENT WEIGHT** soft key.

7. To indicate whether or not patient weight is to be used in Drug Calculation, press either **Yes** or **No** soft key.ທ

8. To enter patient weight (if required) in kilograms, use numeric data entry keys.

9. Press **TIME UNITS** soft key.

10. To select time base for drug calculation, press either **Min**, **Hour**, or **Day** soft key.

11. Press soft key next to desired **DOSING UNITS**.

12. Verify correct infusion parameters and press **NEXT** soft key.

   • Syringe module: If ALL Mode is enabled, **VTBI ALL** displays.

13. To make a rate or dose entry, press applicable soft key, **RATE** or **DOSE**, and use numeric data entry keys (other value is calculated and displayed).

14. To enter volume to be infused, press **VTBI** soft key and use numeric data entry keys. bother

   • **BOLUS** soft key appears only if Bolus Dose is enabled within selected profile and a VTBI is entered.

   • Syringe Module: When VTBI equals ALL, **ALL** soft key appears inactive when **VTBI** soft key is pressed and active when a value is entered.
15. Verify parameters are correct and press START soft key.

**Pausing, Restarting, Restoring Infusion**

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "Continuous Infusion" procedure.

**Changing Rate or VTBI During Infusion**

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "Continuous Infusion" procedure.

**NOTES:**

1. Do not enter a patient weight if weight is not used in the calculation.

2. Pump Module: At rates less than 10 mL/h, the rate is displayed to two decimal places, and the VTBI can be entered and is displayed to two decimal places.

3. Pump Module: In the Drug Calculation mode, the system infuses at the calculated rate rounded to the nearest one-hundredth of a mL per hour (as displayed on the programming screen). The rate shown in the Rate Display will be rounded to the nearest one-tenth of a mL per hour.
1. Set up infusion as described in "Continuous Infusion - Drug Calculation" procedure, but do not start infusion.

2. Press BOLUS soft key.

3. To enter bolus dose, use numeric data entry keys.
   - After a bolus dose and weight (if used) are entered, bolus VTBI and concentration [conc] alternate in Main Display.

4. Press soft key next to appropriate unit of measure for dose. 

5. To enter bolus duration, use numeric data entry keys.
   - TOTAL DOSE alternates with INFUSE AT rate.

6. Verify parameters are correct and press START soft key.

**Stopping and Restoring Bolus Dose**

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "Bolus Dose" procedure.

**NOTES:**

1. If mcg or mg is selected as the dosing unit, a PATIENT WEIGHT entry cannot be made. If mcg/kg or mg/kg is selected as the dosing unit, a PATIENT WEIGHT entry is required.

2. To see details during the bolus infusion, press the CHANNEL SELECT key.
The following procedure should be used only when:

• drug to be infused is not listed in Drug Library,
• primary infusion is running, and
• a check valve administration set is being used.

To program a primary infusion, reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", “IV Fluid Infusion” procedure. To program a basic infusion, reference "Infusion - NO Guardrails® Suite MX Protection”.

1. Press SECONDARY soft key and then BASIC SEC soft key. Continue with next step.

2. Enter secondary infusion rate or duration, as follows:
   • To enter secondary infusion rate, press RATE soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
   • To enter duration, press DURATION soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

3. To enter secondary volume to be infused, press VTBI soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

4. Open clamp on secondary administration set.

5. Verify correct infusion parameters and press START soft key.

### Changing Primary Infusion Parameter

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.

2. Press PRIMARY soft key.

3. To change primary infusion parameter, press applicable soft key (RATE or VTBI), and use numeric data entry keys.
Changing Primary Infusion Parameter
(Continued)

   • Secondary setup screen displays.

5. To resume secondary infusion, press START soft key.

Pausing, Restarting, Restoring Infusion

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "Continuous Infusion" procedure.

Changing Rate or VTBI During Infusion

Reference "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection", "Continuous Infusion" procedure.

Stopping Secondary and Returning to Primary

1. To view volume infused, press VOLUME INFUSED soft key.
   • Total volume infused (primary + secondary), and time and date volume infused was last cleared, display for each module.

2. To view primary and secondary volume(s) infused, press PRI/SEC VOLUME soft key.

3. To clear volume infused:
   • If only selected module is to be cleared, press soft key next to applicable module(s) and press CLEAR CHANNEL soft key.
     ♦ Volume clears on selected module(s).
   • If all modules are to be cleared, press CLEAR ALL soft key.

-- Continued on Next Page --
Viewing and Clearing Volume Infused (Continued)

- To return to main screen, press MAIN SCREEN soft key.

NOTES:

1. Date format is year-month-day.
2. Pump Module: A PRI/SEC VOLUME soft key is available to allow secondary volume infused to be displayed.
3. If no key is pressed, main screen appears after 30 seconds.
4. The illustrated example is a Syringe Module display. A Pump Module display has a PRI/SEC VOLUME soft key.

Channel Labels

Selecting

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. Press OPTIONS key.
4. Press **Channel Labels** soft key.

5. Press soft key for desired label. • Selected label is highlighted and scrolls in Message Display.

6. To continue infusion, press **START** soft key.

   **OR**

   Program infusion as previously described.
NOTES:

1. The Channel Labels option is not available if a Guardrails IV Fluids or Guardrails Drugs infusion is running on the module.
2. To view additional labels, press a soft key next to a letter group to navigate through alphabet, and/or PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN soft keys.

Removing 

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. Press OPTIONS key.
4. Press Channel Labels soft key.
5. Press CLEAR LABEL soft key.
   - Label stops scrolling in Message Display.
6. To begin infusion, press start soft key.

OR

Program infusion as previously described.

NOTE:

1. A channel label is removed when the Basic Infusion is promoted to a Guardrails IV Fluids or Guardrails Drugs infusion.
The delay period for an infusion can be programmed as a specific number of minutes or a time of day, as described in the following procedures. An infusion delay can be programmed prior to or after an infusion is initiated.

Since by definition, an infusion with Delay Options will not be infusing for a programmed period of time, it is assumed that another infusing IV line will keep the vein open until the delayed infusion begins. When a delay is programmed, the infusion stops when complete and no KVO is delivered.

Delay Options

Delay Options can be enabled at the time the Alaris® System is configured for use. If Delay Options is enabled, a primary infusion can be programmed to be delayed for a specified period of time and a callback can be scheduled, as described in the following procedures.

delay_options.png

Delay Options can be enabled at the time the Alaris® System is configured for use. If Delay Options is enabled, a primary infusion can be programmed to be delayed for a specified period of time and a callback can be scheduled, as described in the following procedures.

Since by definition, an infusion with Delay Options will not be infusing for a programmed period of time, it is assumed that another infusing IV line will keep the vein open until the delayed infusion begins. When a delay is programmed, the infusion stops when complete and no KVO is delivered.

Delaying Infusion

The delay period for an infusion can be programmed as a specific number of minutes or a time of day, as described in the following procedures. An infusion delay can be programmed prior to or after an infusion is initiated.

Specifying by Minutes

The Delay for option is used to program an infusion delay for a minimum of 1 minute and up to 120 minutes.

1. Press DELAY OPTIONS soft key.
2. Press Delay for soft key.

3. To enter number of minutes (up to 120) infusion is to be delayed for, use numeric data entry keys.

4. Press CONFIRM soft key.
   - Delay period counts down on Main Display.
   - If a Before callback has not been scheduled (reference "Scheduling a Callback" procedure), infusion automatically initiates at end of delay period.
### Delaying Infusion (Continued)

#### Specifying by Time of Day

The **Delay until** option is used to program an infusion delay for a minimum of 1 minute and up to 23 hours 59 minutes.

1. Press **DELAY OPTIONS** soft key.
2. Press **Delay until** soft key.

3. If **Current time** displayed is correct, press **CONFIRM** soft key; otherwise, press **Change Time** and enter correct time. (Reference “System Options”, “Time of Day” in PC Unit Section of this DFU.)

4. To enter time of day infusion is to be initiated (up to 23 hours 59 minutes), use numeric data entry keys.

5. Press **CONFIRM** soft key.
   - Time infusion is scheduled to start appears on Main Display.
   - If a **Before** callback has not been scheduled (reference “Scheduling a Callback” procedure), infusion automatically initiates at end of delay period.

---

**NOTE:**

① If the current time has been previously confirmed, the **Time of Day** screen will not be displayed.
When programming a **Delay for** or **Delay until** infusion, a callback can be scheduled for that infusion. There are three types of callback:

- **Before** - gives an alert when delay period is completed and infusion needs to be initiated.
- **After** - gives an alert when delayed infusion has completed.
- **Before** and **After** - gives an alert when delay period is completed and infusion needs to be initiated and when delayed infusion has completed.

The default callback (**None**), or the callback for the current profile, appears on the Main Display. To schedule a different callback:

1. **Prior to** pressing **CONFIRM** soft key to initiate delay during **Delay for** or **Delay until** programming process, press **CALL BACK** soft key.
2. Press soft key corresponding to desired callback option.
   - Scheduled callback appears on Main Display.
3. To initiate delay, press **CONFIRM** soft key.
   - If **Delay until** programming, time infusion is scheduled to start appears on Main Display.
   - **OR**
   - If **Delay for** programming, delay period counts down on Main Display.
   - If **Before** option was selected:
     - An audio prompt sounds when delay period has ended.
     - Yellow Standby Status Indicator flashes.
     - **DELAY COMPLETE** scrolls in Message Display and appears on Main Display.

---Continued on Next Page---
Delay Options (Continued)

Scheduling a Callback (Continued)

• If **After** option was selected:
  - An audio prompt sounds when delayed infusion completes, and continues to sound until responded to.
  - Yellow Standby Status Indicator flashes until audio is silenced.
  - Infusion completed message appears on Main Display.
  - **Infusion Complete** scrolls in Message Display.
• If **Before and After** option was selected, same prompts and indicators mentioned above for both **Before** and **After** options are exhibited.

4. To respond to a callback:
   • **Before** callback:  
     Press CHANNEL SELECT key and then START soft key.  
     OR  
     Press RESTART key.
   • **After** callback:  Press CONFIRM soft key.
   • **Before and After** callback:  Respond as indicated above for both **Before** and **After**.

Pausing Infusion

1. Press DELAY OPTIONS soft key.
2. Press Pause soft key.
Since, by definition, a multidose infusion will not be infusing for a programmed period of time, it is assumed that another infusing IV line will keep the vein open until the beginning of the first dose and between subsequent doses. There is no keep vein open (KVO) infusion at the completion of a programmed Delay until infusion.

Syringe Module: ALL Mode is not supported in Multidose Mode.

**NOTES:**

1. Using the Pause function in the Delay Options screen is the same as pressing the PAUSE key on the Syringe Module.

2. The time displayed in the upper right corner of the screen is the time of day in a 24-hour clock format (military time).

**WARNS:**

- The Multidose feature is to be used only by personnel properly trained in using multidose infusions.

- Caution labels, which clearly differentiate single dose and multidose containers, must be utilized.

- Single dose piggybacking systems employing check valve sets are not designed for use with multidose containers.
The Delay Options function for multidose infusions is similar to Delay Options for continuous drug infusions, with the following differences:

- **Delay for** option (when scheduling a callback) is not available in Multidose Mode.
- Maximum allowable delay on a multidose infusion is 8 hours.

1. Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key.
2. Press **OPTIONS** key.
3. Press **Multidose** soft key.

4. Start applicable infusion, as described in following procedures:
   - **Volume/Duration Enabled**
   - **Volume/Duration Disabled**
2. Press **VOLUME DURATION** soft key.

3. To enter volume to be infused for each dose, use numeric data entry keys.

4. To enter duration for each dose, press **DURATION** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.²

5. To enter time interval (1 to 24 hours) between doses, press **DOSE INTERVAL** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

6. To enter number of doses, press **# OF DOSES** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
   - If Delay Options is enabled, **DELAY OPTIONS** soft key appears.³

7. To begin multidose infusion, press **START** soft key.
   - Main Display shows remaining VTBI for that dose.
   - At completion of a multidose program, **MULTIDOSE COMPLETE** appears on Main Display.⁴
8. To see detail screen during or between infusions, press CHANNEL SELECT key.
   • During infusion, **Volume Remaining** displays.
   • Between infusions:
     ♦ Number of doses completed and when next dose starts display.
     ♦ Yellow Standby Status Indicator illuminates.

NOTES:
① If the current time has been previously confirmed, the **Time of Day** screen will not be displayed.
② **RATE** is calculated with each keystroke for **DURATION**.
③ Reference “Delay Options” procedure to program an infusion delay. When delaying an infusion, a multidose cannot be delayed for more than 8 hours, and all doses in the multidose program must be completed within a 24-hour program.
④ Syringe Module: If NEOi is enabled, the Near End of infusion message appears near the end of the last dose.

**Volume/Duration Disabled**

1. To enter rate, use numeric data entry keys.
2. To enter volume to be infused for each dose, press **VOLUME/DOSE** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
3. To enter time interval (1 to 24 hours) between doses, press **DOSE INTERVAL** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
4. To enter number of doses, press **# OF DOSES** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
   • If Delay Options is enabled, **DELAY OPTIONS** soft key appears. ①
5. To begin multidose infusion, press START soft key.
   • Main Display shows remaining VTBI for that dose.
   • At completion of a multidose program, MULTIDOSE COMPLETE appears on Main Display. ②

6. To see detail screen during or between infusions, press CHANNEL SELECT key.
   • During infusion, Volume Remaining displays.
   • Between infusions:
     ♦ Number of doses completed and when next dose starts displays.
     ♦ Yellow Standby Status Indicator illuminates.

NOTES:
① Reference “Delay Options” procedure to program an infusion delay. When delaying an infusion, a multidose cannot be delayed for more than 8 hours, and all doses in the multidose program must be completed within a 24-hour program.
② Syringe Module: If NEOi is enabled, the Near End of infusion message appears near the end of the last dose.

Selecting Pressure Limit

Pump Module

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. Press OPTIONS key.
Selecting Pressure Limit (Continued)

Pump Module (Continued)

3. Press **Pressure Limit** soft key.

4. Press either **Pump** or **Selectable** pressure soft key. If **Selectable** is pressed, continue with next step; otherwise, proceed to last step.

5. To select occlusion pressure limit, press either **Up** or **Down** soft key.

6. Verify correct occlusion pressure limit input and press **CONFIRM** soft key.

7. Press **START** soft key.
1. Ensure pressure sensing disc is installed correctly.
2. Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key.

### WARNING

Installing a pressure sensing disc after an infusion has started can result in a bolus to the patient.

3. Press **OPTIONS** key.

4. Press **Pressure Limit** soft key.

5. To enter a new pressure limit value, press **Change Value** soft key.

   **OR**

   If Auto Pressure feature is enabled, press **Auto Pressure** soft key.
Selecting Pressure Limit (Continued)

Syringe Module (Continued)

Pressure Sensing Disc Installed
(Continued)


Pressure Sensing Disc NOT Installed

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. Press OPTIONS key.
3. Press Pressure Limit soft key.

4. To select a pressure limit, press appropriate soft key.
5. Press CONFIRM soft key.

NOTE:

① If Auto Pressure is selected and current pressure is:
   - 100 mmHg or less – system adds 30 mmHg to current pressure, to create a new alarm limit
   - greater than 100 mmHg – system adds 30% to current pressure, to create a new alarm limit
Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU, “General Setup and Operation”, for various “system” start-up and setup procedures.

### Setting Up for Gravity Infusion (Pump Module)

2. Adjust container to hang 20 inches above patient’s vascular access device.
3. Attach administration set to patient’s vascular access device.
4. Adjust flow rate with administration set roller clamp.

### Changing Solution Container (Pump Module)

1. To stop infusion, press **PAUSE** key.
2. Close roller clamp.
3. Remove empty solution container.
4. Insert administration set spike into prepared fluid container, following accepted hospital/facility procedure, and hang container 20 inches above Pump Module.
5. Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key.
6. To enter VTBI, press **VTBI** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
7. Open roller clamp.
8. To resume infusion, press **START** soft key.
1. To stop infusion, press **PAUSE** key.
2. Open plunger grippers and syringe barrel clamp.
   - An audio prompt sounds (to silence, press **SILENCE** key).
   - Red Alarm Status Indicator flashes.
   - **CHECK SYRINGE** scrolls in Message Display.

3. Remove syringe and separate administration set from syringe.
4. Reattach administration set to new syringe and load new syringe (reference "Getting Started").
5. Select syringe type and size (reference "Programming", "Primary Infusion - With Guardrails® Suite MX Protection").
6. Press **CONFIRM** soft key.
8. Press **RESTORE** soft key.
   - **OR**
     To enter VTBI and rate, press **RATE** soft key and use numeric data entry keys, and then **VTBI** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
9. To begin infusion, press **START** soft key.
• The Pump and Syringe Modules are designed to stop fluid flow under alarm conditions. Periodic patient monitoring must be performed to ensure the infusion is proceeding as expected. It is a positive displacement delivery system, capable of developing positive fluid pressures to overcome widely varying resistances to flow encountered in practice, including resistances to flow imposed by small gauge catheters, filters and intra-arterial infusion. It is neither designed nor intended to detect infiltrations and will not alarm under infiltration conditions.

• The use of positive displacement infusion devices ported together with gravity flow infusion systems into a common IV site may impede the flow of common "gravity only" systems, affecting their performance. Hospital/facility personnel must ensure the performance of the common IV site is satisfactory under these circumstances.

• To prevent a potential free-flow condition, ensure no extraneous object (for example, bedding, tubing, glove) is enclosed or caught in the Pump Module door.

• Each time the Alaris® System is turned on, verify and/or set the monitoring mode, resistance alert, and/or pressure alarm limit. If the monitoring mode, resistance alert, and/or pressure alarm limit are not verified, the instrument may not operate within the desired occlusion detection parameter(s).
• **When priming:**
  - Ensure patient is not connected.
  - Ensure air is expelled from line prior to beginning infusion (unexpelled air in line could have serious consequences).

Failure to prime correctly can delay infusion delivery and cause the total volume to be infused to read higher than the actual total delivered to the patient.

• **Discard if** packaging is not intact or protector caps are unattached.

• Use only **Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System administration sets** with the Alaris® Pump Module. The use of any other set may cause improper instrument operation, resulting in an inaccurate fluid delivery or other potential hazard. For a list of compatible sets, reference the Set Compatibility Card (provided separately).

• Use only standard single-use disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and administration sets, designed for use on syringe pumps, with the Alaris® Syringe Module. The use of any other **syringe or administration set** may cause improper instrument operation, resulting in an inaccurate fluid delivery or pressure sensing, or other potential hazards. For a list of compatible syringes, reference "Compatible Syringes". For a list of compatible sets, reference the Set Compatibility Card (provided separately).

• **Before loading or unloading the syringe**, always turn off fluid flow to the patient, using the tubing clamp or stopcock. Uncontrolled fluid flow can occur when the administration set is not clamped or turned off, and may cause serious injury or death.
CAUTION

Before operating instrument, verify that administration set is free from kinks and installed correctly in instrument.

Epidural Administration

WARNINGS

• Epidural administration of drugs other than those indicated for epidural use could result in serious injury to the patient.

• It is strongly recommended that the source container, administration set, and Pump Module used for epidural drug delivery be clearly differentiated from those used for other types of administration.

• It is strongly recommended that the syringe, administration set and Syringe Module used for epidural drug delivery be clearly differentiated from those used for other types of administration.

WARNINGS

• When the pressure sensing disc is not being used and an occlusion occurs, there is a risk of infusing pressurized buildup of infusates upon correction of the occlusion. To avoid an inadvertent bolus, relieve the pressure before restarting the infusion.

• Ensure the displayed syringe manufacturer and syringe size correctly identify the installed syringe. Mismatches may cause an under-infusion or over-infusion to the patient that could result in serious injury and/or death. For a list of compatible syringes, reference “Compatible Syringes”.

• Installing a pressure sensing disc after an infusion has started can result in a bolus to the patient.
WARNINGS

- The Alaris® System can be used for epidural administration of anesthetic and analgesic drugs. This application is only appropriate when using anesthetics and analgesics labeled for continuous epidural administration and catheters intended specifically for epidural use. Use only an Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System administration set or syringe set, without a ‘Y’ connector or injection port, for epidural infusions.
  - Epidural administration of anesthetic drugs: Use indwelling catheters specifically indicated for short-term (96 hours or less) anesthetic epidural drug delivery.
  - Epidural administration of analgesic drugs: Use indwelling catheters specifically indicated for either short-term or long-term analgesic epidural drug delivery.

Guadrails® Suite MX

WARNINGS

- The Guardrails® Suite MX incorporates dosing limits and instrument configuration parameters based on hospital/facility protocol. The software adds a test of reasonableness to drug programming based on the limits defined by the hospital/facility. Qualified personnel must ensure the appropriateness of drug dosing limits, drug compatibility, and instrument performance, as part of the overall infusion. Potential hazards include drug interactions, inaccurate delivery rates and pressure alarms, and nuisance alarms.
  - When loading a data set with the Guardrails® Suite MX, ensure the correct profile (for patient care area) is selected prior to starting an infusion. Failure to use the appropriate profile could cause serious consequences.
The Syringe Module uses standard, single-use, disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and administration sets, designed for use on syringe pumps.

- For a list of compatible syringes, reference "Compatible Syringes".
- Use aseptic techniques when handling sets and syringes.
- Administration sets are supplied with a sterile and nonpyrogenic fluid path for one-time use. Do not resterilize.
- For administration set replacement interval, refer to facility protocol and/or government standards (such as, CDC guidelines in United States).
- Discard administration set per facility protocol.
- For IV push medication (put instrument on hold), clamp tubing above port.
- Flush port(s) per facility protocol.

The Pump Module uses a wide variety of Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System administration sets. The sets are designed for use with the Pump Module as well as for gravity-flow, stand-alone use.

- Primary set must be primed before use. It can be loaded into Pump Module to deliver a large volume infusion or it can be set up to deliver a gravity infusion.
- Safety clamp fitment is a unique clamping device on the pumping segment that is part of all Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System sets (reference "Safety Clamp Fitment").

The Syringe Module uses standard, single-use, disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and administration sets, designed for use on syringe pumps.

- For a list of compatible syringes, reference "Compatible Syringes".
When a new Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System administration set is removed from the package, the safety clamp fitment is in the open position (white slide clamp aligned with blue fitment). In this open position, flow is not occluded but is allowed as required for the priming process. The roller clamp is used to control flow during the priming process.

**NOTE:**

① Dry time is dependent on area temperature, humidity and ventilation.

**CAUTIONS**

- If the Needle-Free Valve is accessed by a needle in an emergency, the valve will be damaged, causing leakage. Replace Needle-Free Valve immediately.
- The Needle-Free Valve is contraindicated for blunt cannula systems.
- Do not leave slip luer syringes unattended.

**SmartSite® Infusion Set (Pump Module)**

1. Prior to every access, swab top of SmartSite® Needle-Free Valve (“Needle-Free Valve”) port with 70% isopropyl alcohol (1 - 2 seconds) and allow to dry (approximately 30 seconds).

2. Prime valve port. If applicable, attach syringe to Needle-Free Valve port and aspirate miniscule air bubbles.

3. Replace every 72 hours or after 100 activations, whichever occurs first. For infusions of blood, blood products or lipid emulsions, replace every 24 hours.

**Safety Clamp Fitment (Pump Module)**

The primary administration set’s safety clamp fitment is a unique clamping device, on the pumping segment, that prevents inadvertent free-flow when the administration set is removed from the instrument.

**Safety Clamp Fitment in Open Position**

When a new Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System administration set is removed from the package, the safety clamp fitment is in the open position (white slide clamp aligned with blue fitment). In this open position, flow is not occluded but is allowed as required for the priming process. The roller clamp is used to control flow during the priming process.
Safety Clamp Fitment in Closed Position

When an Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System administration set is removed from the Pump Module, the instrument automatically engages the safety clamp fitment in the closed position (white slide clamp projects out from under blue fitment). In this closed position, flow is occluded.

Compatible Syringes (Syringe Module)

The Syringe Module is calibrated and labeled for use with the following single-use disposable luer-lock syringes. Use only the syringe size and type specified on the Main Display. The full list of permitted syringe models is dependent on the Syringe Module’s software version.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manufacturer</th>
<th>1cc</th>
<th>3cc</th>
<th>5cc</th>
<th>6cc</th>
<th>10cc</th>
<th>12cc</th>
<th>20cc</th>
<th>30cc</th>
<th>35cc</th>
<th>50cc</th>
<th>60cc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AstraZeneca</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-D Plastipak</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVAC</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monoject</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terumo</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CAUTION

When using a 10cc or smaller syringe, Cardinal Health strongly recommends using an extension set with a pressure disc, for improved pressure monitoring and shorter times to occlusion alarm.

NOTES:

1. Prefilled Diprivan.
2. The Monoject SoftPack Luer-Lock Syringe (blister pack) is the only currently supported Monoject 3cc.
3. The Terumo 5cc can also be used as a 6cc and the 10cc as a 12cc.
Pump and Syringe Modules

Anesthesia Mode
When operating in Anesthesia Mode, a module can be paused indefinitely without an alarm. Anesthesia Mode also makes it possible to have additional drugs in each profile, which are only accessible when operating in that mode.

Bolus Dose
Allows a bolus infusion to be programmed using either Drug Library or drug calculation feature. It can be programmed with or without a continuous infusion following a bolus.

Callback
A callback for a programmed delay (reference "Delay Options" definition) can be scheduled to give an alert Before an infusion is to be initiated, After an infusion is completed, Before and After an infusion, or no alert (None).

Channel Labels
Available when Profiles feature is enabled. It provides a hospital-defined list of labels, displayed in Channel (module) Message Display, and identifies module with catheter location or other helpful information.

Concentration Limits
Limits specified for range of concentrations allowed for a particular drug in a profile.

Delay Options
Allows system to be programmed to delay start of an infusion a) for up to 120 minutes or b) for a specific time up to 23 hours 59 minutes.

Dose Checking
Always Dose Checking option causes a soft Guardrails® Alert ("Alert") to occur each time a dose limit is exceeded. Drug label in Message Display provides an indicator ("↑↑↑" or "LLL") that dose is beyond current Soft Limit.

Smart Dose Checking option causes an initial soft Alert to occur when a dose limit is exceeded. Subsequent programming beyond dose limit will not receive an Alert. Drug label in Message Display provides an indicator ("↑↑↑" or "LLL") that dose is beyond current Soft Limit.
Features and Displays  (Continued)

Features and Definitions  (Continued)

Pump and Syringe Modules  (Continued)

Drug Calculation

Allows:

- entry of drug dose for a continuous infusion (Alaris® System calculates correct flow rate to achieve desired dose),

  OR

- entry of flow rate for a continuous infusion (Alaris® System calculates corresponding drug dose).

Duration Limits

Hospital-established limits around duration of infusion.

Dynamic Pressure Display

Appears on Main Display. If enabled, it graphically displays current patient-side occlusion pressure set point and current patient-side operating pressure for that module. (Reference "Displays" for additional "Dynamic Pressure Display" information.)

Event Logging

Event Logging records instrument operations.

Guardrails® Drug Library ("Drug Library")

When Profiles feature is enabled, it provides a hospital-defined list of drugs and concentrations appropriate for use in as many as 10 profiles. Drug Library use automates programming steps, including drug name, drug amount and diluent volume, and activates hospital-established best-practice limits. Drug Library entries can be delivered as a primary or secondary, or both, as determined by hospital-health system.

Guardrails® Limit ("Limit")

A programming Limit or best-practice guideline determined by hospital/health system and entered into system's data set. Supports concentration Limits for all infusions that utilize concentration. Profile-specific Limits can be defined for flow rate, patient weight, body surface area (BSA), maximum and minimum continuous dose, or total dose and duration for each drug in a Drug Library. Dose and duration Limits can be defined by hospital/health system as "Hard" and/or "Soft" Limits.

- A Hard Limit is a programmed Limit that cannot be overridden, except in anesthesia mode.
- A Soft Limit is a programmed Limit that can be overridden.
### Features and Displays (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Initial Value</strong></td>
<td>An optional and editable starting value for continuous infusion dose, duration, bolus dose, bolus rate of administration or bolus dose duration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IV Fluid Library</strong></td>
<td>An optional library consisting of Guardrails® IV Fluids (&quot;IV Fluids&quot;) (for example, TPN) and Limits around rate of delivery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multidose Mode</strong></td>
<td>Allows 2 - 24 doses to be programmed at equally spaced intervals on the same module over a 24-hour period. This mode is designed to allow delivery of multiple, equal doses from the same IV container at regularly scheduled intervals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rapid Bolus</strong></td>
<td>Fastest rate at which bolus dose should be delivered, as defined by facility's clinical best-practice guidelines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Restore</strong></td>
<td>To simplify programming, can be used to recall previous rate and volume settings for same patient. This option is only available if patient is not new and system is powered up within 8 hours of last usage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Therapies</strong></td>
<td>An optional hospital-defined therapy or clinical indication for delivery of that infusion. Different Limits can be defined for same medication with different therapeutic indications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Dose Limits</strong></td>
<td>Hospital-established Limits around total dose of infusion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Volume/Duration</strong></td>
<td>Allows a volume-to-be-infused (VTBI) and duration (infusion time) to be programmed. Flow rate is automatically calculated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Auto-Restart

Part of Alaris® System’s Downstream Occlusion Detection system designed to minimize nuisance, patient-side occlusion alarms. Allows system to automatically continue an infusion following detection of a patient-side occlusion if downstream pressure falls to an acceptable level within a 15-second "Checking Line" period. If this feature is enabled, "Checking Line" function occurs when downstream pressure exceeds pressure limit.

- In Selectable Pressure Mode: Pressure limit will be either user adjustable or "locked" in system configuration.
- In Pump Pressure Mode: Pressure limit is a function of flow rate and is automatically determined by device.

If downstream pressure decreases to a predetermined level, (below 50% of pressure limit) during 15-second "Checking Line" period, infusion automatically continues. If condition is not cleared within 15 seconds, a "Partial Occlusion - Patient Side" alarm occurs.

Using Guardrails® Editor Software, system can be configured to allow 0 (zero) to 9 restart attempts within a rolling 10 minute period. If allowable number of restarts is exceeded or if feature is set to zero, an "Occluded - Patient Side" alarm occurs.

Default Occlusion Pressure

Starting occlusion pressure limit which can be configured by profile in 25 mmHg increments.

Free Flow Protection

All Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System administration sets utilize a unique clamping device (safety clamp on pumping mechanism) to prevent inadvertent free-flow when administration set is removed from instrument.

KVO Rate Adjust

Used to select KVO (Keep Vein Open) rate (0.1 to 20 mL/h allowed), which is rate of fluid flow after an "Infusion Complete" occurs. KVO rate will never exceed infusion rate.
Occlusion Pressure

A complete range of downstream occlusion detection options is provided.

- **Pump mode**: Downstream occlusion alarm threshold is 525 mmHg at flow rates of 30 mL/h or greater. For rates <30 mL/h, occlusion pressure is rate-dependent, to ensure rapid response to occlusions.

- **Selectable pressure mode**: Downstream occlusion alarm threshold can be adjusted in 25 mmHg increments, up to maximum occlusion pressure of 525 mmHg.

- **Auto-Restart**: *(See "Auto-Restart" definition.)*

In addition, Alaris® System provides fluid-side occlusion detection.

Secondary Infusions

Dual rate sequential piggyback (secondary) infusions may be infused, with limits, at delivery rates and volumes independent of primary infusion parameters. Automatic changeover occurs to primary infusion parameters when secondary infusion is complete if an Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System check valve administration set is used.

---

**Features and Displays** (Continued)

**Features and Definitions** (Continued)

**Pump Module** (Continued)

**Occlusion Pressure**

- **Pump mode**: Downstream occlusion alarm threshold is 525 mmHg at flow rates of 30 mL/h or greater. For rates <30 mL/h, occlusion pressure is rate-dependent, to ensure rapid response to occlusions.

- **Selectable pressure mode**: Downstream occlusion alarm threshold can be adjusted in 25 mmHg increments, up to maximum occlusion pressure of 525 mmHg.

- **Auto-Restart**: *(See "Auto-Restart" definition.)*

In addition, Alaris® System provides fluid-side occlusion detection.

**Secondary Infusions**

Dual rate sequential piggyback (secondary) infusions may be infused, with limits, at delivery rates and volumes independent of primary infusion parameters. Automatic changeover occurs to primary infusion parameters when secondary infusion is complete if an Alaris® Pump Module/Gemini Infusion System check valve administration set is used.

---

**Syringe Module**

**All Mode**

When **ALL** is selected as the volume to be infused (VTBI), entire contents of the syringe will be delivered.

**Auto Pressure**

When enabled and a pressure sensing disc is in use, Auto Pressure option is displayed in Pressure Limit screen. Auto Pressure automatically sets alarm limit for a shorter time to alarm, as follows:

- If current pressure is 100 mmHg or less, system adds 30 mmHg to current pressure, to create a new alarm limit.

- If current pressure is greater than 100 mmHg, system adds 30% to current pressure, to create a new alarm limit.

**Auto Pressure Limit Adjustment**

When a bolus is delivered, pressure alarm limits are temporarily raised to maximum limit.
Auto Syringe Size Identification
System automatically detects syringe size and narrows down syringe selection list.

Back Off
This feature is only available when administration set in use has a pressure sensing disc. When enabled, motor reverses plunger movement during an occlusion until pressure returns to preocclusion levels, automatically reducing bolus flow.

Fast Start
When Fast Start is enabled and an administration set having a pressure sensing disc is used, instrument runs at an increased rate when an infusion is first started, taking-up any slack in drive mechanism.

Infusion Complete
An alert is given when current infusion is complete and VTBI has reached zero.

Near End of Infusion (NEOI)
Allows an alert to be configured to sound anywhere from 1 to 60 minutes before infusion is complete. Alert will occur at configured time or when 25% of VTBI remains, whichever comes later.

Occlusion Pressure
A complete range of downstream occlusion detection options is provided.
- With pressure sensing disc: Downstream occlusion alarm threshold is selectable between 25 and 1000 mmHg, in 1 mmHg increments.
- Without pressure sensing disc: Downstream occlusion alarm threshold can be set to low, medium, or high.

Pressure Sensing Disc
When installed, pressure sensing disc significantly improves instrument's pressure sensing capabilities for a faster occlusion detection time, and makes following features available:
- Auto Pressure
- Back-Off
- Customizable Pressure Alarm Settings (see "Occlusion Pressure")
- Fast Start
- Pressure Tracking
Features and Displays  (Continued)

Features and Definitions  (Continued)

Syringe Module  (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pressure Tracking</td>
<td>Dynamic current pressure display is only available when pressure sensing disc is inserted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priming</td>
<td>Allows a limited volume of fluid to be delivered in order to prime administration set prior to being connected to a patient or after changing a syringe. When priming, a single continuous press of PRIME soft key delivers up to 2 mL of priming fluid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selectable KVO</td>
<td>Allows some infusions to automatically switch into KVO mode upon completion. KVO option setting cannot be changed after instrument is powered on and a profile selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Instrument gives an alert and stops when an empty syringe is detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Volume Detection</td>
<td>System automatically detects fluid volume in a syringe when it is inserted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operating Features, Controls, Indicators

**Status Indicators**
- IUI Connector, Left (red)
- Alarm (green)
- Infusing (green)
- Standby (yellow)

**Features and Displays** (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IUI Connector, Right</td>
<td>(not visible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rate Display</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel (module) Message Display</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel (module) Identification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel (module) Select Key</td>
<td>When pressed, selects corresponding module for infusion parameter entry and infusion setup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause Key</td>
<td>When pressed during an infusion, temporarily stops infusion on that module. After approximately 2 minutes, a visual and audio prompt begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel (module) Off Key</td>
<td>When pressed and held until a beep is heard, stops infusion on that module, deselects that module, and if only that module had been operating, system powers down. Repeat for other operating modules to power off each module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restart Key</td>
<td>When pressed, resumes operation of a previously paused or alarmed infusion on that module.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Module Release Latch**
- When pressed, allows module to be removed.
**Features and Displays** (Continued)

### Operating Features, Controls, Indicators (Continued)

- **Rate Display**
- **Message Display**
- **Channel (module) Identification**
- **Module Release Latch:** When pressed, allows module to be removed.
- **Pressure Transducer / Pressure Sensing Disc Housing**
- **Gripper Control / Drive Head Release** (shown in closed position)
- **Plunger Grippers** (shown in closed position)
- **Barrel Flange Grippers**
- **Syringe Barrel Sensor**
- **IUI Connector, Right**
- **IUI Connector, Left**
- **Syringe Barrel Clamp / Sizer**
- **Plunger Grippers**
- **Gripper Control / Drive Head Release**
- **Module Release Latch:** When pressed, allows module to be removed.

**Status Indicators**
- Alarm (red)
- Infusing (green)
- Standby (yellow)

**Channel (module) Select Key:**
When pressed, selects corresponding module for infusion parameter entry and infusion setup.

**Pause Key:**
When pressed during an infusion, temporarily stops infusion on that module. After approximately 2 minutes, a visual and audio prompt begins.

**Channel (module) Off Key:**
When pressed and held until a beep is heard, stops infusion on that module, deselects that module, and if only that module had been operating, system powers down. Repeat for other operating modules to power off each module.

**Restart Key:**
When pressed, resumes operation of a previously paused or alarmed infusion on that module.
The displays illustrated throughout this document are for illustration purposes only. The display content will vary, depending on configuration settings, type of administration set in use, hospital-defined data set uploaded using the Guardrails® Suite MX, programmed drug calculation parameters, and many other variables. Refer to specific drug product labeling for information concerning appropriate administration techniques and dosages.

Main Display

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU.

Dynamic Pressure Display

Dynamic Pressure Display

Current operating pressure is indicated by solid bar.

Patient-side occlusion pressure set point is indicated by tick mark.

CAUTION

Although the dynamic pressure display bars for the Syringe Module and Pump Module both use the full width of the screen for display, they each represent different ranges. The Pump Module’s range is 50 to 525 mmHg and the Syringe Module’s range is 25 to 1000 mmHg.
The Pump and Syringe Modules use the following parameters, entered during the drug calculation setup procedure:

- **Bolus dose duration**: Time period over which bolus dose is to be administered.
- **Bolus dose units**: Units used in calculating bolus dose. Bolus dose units are selected from alternatives provided.
- **Diluent volume**: Volume of fluid used as diluent for drug (mL).
- **Dosing units**: Units used to calculate continuous infusion drug dose. Dosing Units are selected from alternatives provided.
- **Drug amount**: Amount of drug in IV container (gram, mg, mcg, mEq, or units).
- **Patient weight**: Weight of patient (kg); this is an optional parameter that is not needed unless drug dose is normalized for patient weight.
- **Time units**: Time base for all calculations (minute, hour, or day).

The bolus dose, drug dose, and flow rate parameters are calculated using the above parameters, as follows:

- Bolus dose = bolus dose x patient weight (if used).
- Bolus dose administration rate (INFUSE AT):
  - When duration is entered = total dose / duration in minutes.
  - When Max Rate is used = Max Rate / 60 x concentration.
- Bolus dose duration = bolus VTBI / bolus rate.
- Bolus dose VTBI = bolus dose / drug concentration.
- Bolus rate = bolus VTBI / duration.
- Continuous drug dose = flow rate x drug concentration (normalized for patient weight if specified by entering a patient weight).
- Continuous flow rate = drug dose / drug concentration (normalized for patient weight if specified by entering a patient weight).
- Duration = VTBI / rate.
- Drug concentration = drug amount / diluent volume.
- Rate = VTBI / duration.

**WARNING**

The Drug Calculation feature is to be used only by personnel properly trained in the administration of continuously infused medications. Extreme caution should be exercised to ensure the correct entry of the drug calculation infusion parameters.
### Drug Calculation Definitions and Formulas (Continued)

- Total bolus dose:
  Bolus dose not weight-based = bolus dose entered.
  Bolus dose weight-based = bolus dose x patient weight.

- Total dose:
  Drug amount.
  Drug amount / patient body surface area (BSA).
  Drug amount / patient weight.

### Configurable Settings

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system configurable settings.

If the configuration settings need to be changed from the "Factory Default" settings, reference the applicable Technical Service Manual or contact Cardinal Health Technical Support, for technical, troubleshooting, and preventive maintenance information.

With the Profiles feature enabled, the settings are configured independently for each profile. A hospital-defined, best-practice data set must be uploaded to enable the Profiles feature. Date and Time is a system setting and is the same in all profiles.

### Shared Infusion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delay Options</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Callback</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None, Before, After, Before and After</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug Calculation</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Bolus Dose</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multidose</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Callback</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None, Before, After, Before and After</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure Dynamic (Dynamic Pressure Display)</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume/Duration</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configurable Settings (Continued)

#### Pump Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accumulated Air</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air-in-Line Settings</td>
<td>75 microliters</td>
<td>50, 75 or 250 microliters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(single bolus)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anesthesia Mode only: 500 microliters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-Restart Attempts</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 - 9 attempts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anesthesia Mode only: 9 attempts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KVO Rate Adjust</td>
<td>1 mL/h</td>
<td>0.1 - 20 mL/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Keep Vein Open)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Rate</td>
<td>999 mL/h</td>
<td>0.1 - 99.9 mL/h in 0.1 mL/h increments;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100 - 999 mL/h in 1.0 mL/h increments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max VTBI</td>
<td>9999 mL</td>
<td>0.1 - 9999 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure Mode</td>
<td>Pump, Selectable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mode Selection</td>
<td>Unlocked</td>
<td>Locked, Unlocked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lock Status</td>
<td>525 mmHg</td>
<td>50 - 525 mmHg in 25 mmHg increments (adjustable only in Selectable Pressure Mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Max Occlusion Pressure</td>
<td>525 mmHg</td>
<td>50 - 525 mmHg in 25 mmHg increments (configured by profile and adjustable only in Selectable Pressure Mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC to PRI Alert</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Dual Rate Sequential Piggybacking)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configurable Settings (Continued)

#### Syringe Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ALL Mode</strong></td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auto Pressure</strong></td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Back Off (after occlusion)</strong></td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fast Start</strong></td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>KVO (Keep Vein Open)</strong></td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rate Adjust</td>
<td>1 mL/h</td>
<td>0.1 - 2.5 mL/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Volume Adjust</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>0.5 - 5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Max Rate</strong></td>
<td>999 mL/h</td>
<td>0.1 - 99.9 mL/h in 0.1 mL/h increments; 100 - 999 mL/h in 1 mL/h increments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Near End (NEOI)</strong></td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Alert Time</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1 - 60 minutes or 25% of remaining infusion time, whichever comes later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occlusion Pressure Set Point:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• With Disc</td>
<td>1000 mmHg</td>
<td>25 - 1000 mmHg in 1 mmHg increments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• No Disc</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Low, Medium, High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Priming</strong></td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Specifications

Pump Module

Accumulated Air Window:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Single Bolus Setting</th>
<th>Volume Window (mL)</th>
<th>% Air that Causes Alarm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*500</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>30%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* In Anesthesia Mode only.

Bolus Volume following Occlusion, Maximum:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rate (mL/h)</th>
<th>Pressure Limit (mmHg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>≤0.3 mL ≤0.6 mL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Critical Volume: The maximum over-infusion which can occur in the event of a single fault condition is 0.6 mL.

Dimensions: 3.3"W x 8.9"H x 5.5"D

Environmental Conditions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating</th>
<th>Storage/Transport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atmospheric Pressure:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525 - 4560 mmHg (700 - 6080 hPa)</td>
<td>375 - 760 mmHg (500 - 1013 hPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Humidity:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 - 90% Noncondensing</td>
<td>5 - 85% Noncondensing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Range:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 - 104°F (5 - 40°C)</td>
<td>-4 - 140°F (-20 - 60°C)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Equipment Orientation: To ensure proper operation, the system must remain in an upright position.

Electrical Classification: Class 1, Type CF Defibrillator Proof

Flow Rate Programming Increments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rate Range (mL/h)</th>
<th>User Input Rates</th>
<th>Device Calculated Rates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.1 - 9.99</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 - 99.9</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 - 999</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fluid Ingress Protection: IPX1, Drip Proof
Infusion of Air, Means to Protect Patient from:
Ultrasonic Air-in-Line Detection
Maximum single bolus size = selectable 50, 75 or 250 microliters nominal (500 microliters in Anesthesia Mode)

Infusion Pressure, Maximum:
654 mmHg (Maximum Occlusion Alarm Threshold plus tolerance)

KVO (Keep Vein Open) Rate:
Factory Default Setting is 1 mL/h if set rate is 1 mL/h or above; or set rate, if rate is 0.9 mL/h or below.

KVO Selection Range:
KVO rate can be set in System Configuration from 0.1 - 20 mL/h in 0.1 mL/h increments.

Occlusion Alarm Thresholds:
Pump Mode: 525 mmHg at rates ≥30 mL/h
Varying level based on rate and patient back–pressure at rates <30 mL/h.
Selectable Mode: User selected, 50 - 525 mmHg in 25 mmHg increments.

Operating Principle:
Positive displacement

Rate Accuracy:
Rate accuracy of Alaris® System is ±5% at rates between 1 and 999 mL/h and ±5.5% at rates <1 mL/h, 95% of the time with 95% confidence, under conditions listed below.

Infusion Rate Range: 0.1 - 999 mL/h
Ambient Temperature: 68 ±4°F (20 ±2°C)
Source Container Height: 20 inches above top of Pump Module
Test Solution: Distilled Water
Distal Back pressure: 0 mmHg (0 kPa)
Needle: 18 gauge
Administration Set Model 2210

**WARNING**

Variations of head height, back pressure or any combination of these may affect rate accuracy. Factors that can influence head height and back pressure are: Administration set configuration, IV solution viscosity and IV solution temperature. Back pressure may also be affected by type of catheter. Reference "Trumpet and Start-Up Curves" for data on how these factors influence rate accuracy.
**Specifications (Continued)**

### Pump Module (Continued)

#### Time to Alarm, Maximum:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rate (mL/h)</th>
<th>Pressure Limit (mmHg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>≤5 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>≤15 seconds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Volume to be Infused

**Programming Increments:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Range (mL)</th>
<th>Increments (mL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.1 - 9.99</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 - 999.9</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 - 9999</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Weight:

2.5 lbs

---

### Syringe Module

#### Bolus Volume following Occlusion (at intermediate rate):

**Without Pressure Sensing Disc:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pressure Setting</th>
<th>Bolus (g)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>0.329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>0.523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>0.736</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**With Pressure Sensing Disc:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pressure Limit (mmHg)</th>
<th>Back Off Disabled</th>
<th>Back Off Enabled</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300 mmHg</td>
<td>0.277</td>
<td>0.098</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 mmHg</td>
<td>0.416</td>
<td>0.136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 mmHg</td>
<td>0.764</td>
<td>0.137</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alaris® System has a back-off safety feature which, when enabled and a pressure sensing disc is in use, is designed to reduce bolus volume on occlusion release.

**WARNING**

**Installing a pressure sensing disc** after an infusion has started can result in a bolus to the patient.
Critical Volume: Maximum over-infusion which can occur in the event of a single-fault condition will not exceed 2% of nominal syringe fill volume during loading and 1% of maximum syringe travel after syringe loading.

Dimensions: 4.5"W x 15.0"H x 7.5"D

Environmental Conditions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Operating</th>
<th>Storage/Transport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Range</td>
<td>41 - 104°F (5 - 40°C)</td>
<td>-4 - 140°F (-20 - 60°C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Humidity</td>
<td>20 - 90% Noncondensing</td>
<td>5 - 85% Noncondensing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmospheric Pressure</td>
<td>525 - 4560 mmHg (700 - 6080 hPa)</td>
<td>375 - 760 mmHg (500 - 1013 hPa)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Equipment Orientation: To ensure proper operation, PC Unit must remain in an upright position.

Flow Rate Programming: Flow rate range is from 0.01 to 999 mL/h and can be selected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flow Rates (mL)</th>
<th>Selectable Increments (mL/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.01 - 9.99</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 - 99.9</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 - 999</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rate Restriction by Syringe Size:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syringe Size (mL)</th>
<th>Flow Rate Range (mL/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50/60</td>
<td>0.1 - 999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.1 - 650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.1 - 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.1 - 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.1 - 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.01 - 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.01 - 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fluid Ingress Protection: IPX1, Drip Proof
Infusion Pressure, Maximum:

Without Pressure Sensing Disc: Approximately 800 mmHg
With Pressure Sensing Disc: 1060 mmHg

KVO (Keep Vein Open) Rate:
Factory default setting is 1 mL/h if set rate is 1 mL/h or above; or set rate, if rate is 0.9 mL/h or below.

KVO Selection Range:
KVO rate can be set in System Configuration, 0.01 - 2.5 mL/h in 0.01 mL/h increments.

Occlusion Alarm Thresholds:

Without Pressure Sensing Disc: Three settings: Low, Medium, High
With Pressure Sensing Disc: User selected, 25 - 1000 mmHg in 1 mmHg increments.

Operating Principle:
Positive displacement

Rate Accuracy:
±2% of full scale plunger travel (not including syringe variation)

**WARNING**
Syringe size and running force, variations of back pressure, or any combination of these may affect rate accuracy. Factors that can influence back pressure are: Administration set configuration, IV solution viscosity, and IV solution temperature. Back pressure may also be affected by type of catheter. Reference "Trumpet and Start-Up Curves" for data on how these factors influence rate accuracy.

Shock Protection:
Type CF, Defibrillator Proof
### Specifications (Continued)

#### Syringe Module (Continued)

**Time to Alarm, Maximum:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rate (mL/h)</th>
<th>No Disc High Setting</th>
<th>With Disc Highest (1000 mmHg) Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>120 minutes</td>
<td>105 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Volume to be Infused Programming Increments:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Range (mL)</th>
<th>Increments (mL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.1 - 9.99</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 - 60</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Weight:** 4.5 lbs

### NOTES:

1. On a high setting, the actual occlusion pressure will vary based on the syringe size and manufacturer.
2. Flow rates as low as 0.01 mL/h are available only with 1cc and 3cc syringes. For larger syringes, lower limit adjusts to 0.1 mL/h.
3. The Maximum Time to Alarm specifications are based on Cardinal Health's standard operating conditions:
   - Atmospheric Pressure: 645 - 795 mmHg
   - Back Pressure: 0 mmHg before producing occlusion
   - Humidity: 20 - 90%
   - Temperature: 68 ±4°F
   - Syringe Type: BD 50/60 cc
Symbols

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system symbols.

Pump and Syringe Modules

Type CF defibrillation-proof equipment.

Single-Use. Do not reuse.

Product contains micron filter, where XX represents filter size.

Product contains a particular element; such as, DEHP = DEHP in fluid pathway.

Product DOES NOT contain a particular element; such as, LATEX = administration set is latex-free.

Approximate administration set priming volume.

Expiration date for product will be identified near hour glass symbol.

Do not use if package is damaged.

Manufacturer

Authorized representative in European Community.

Pump Module

Drops per milliliter specification for product will be identified on drop symbol.

Product incorporates SmartSite® Needle-Free Valve ports and should not be accessed by a needle.
In this instrument, as with all infusion systems, the action of the pumping mechanism and variations in individual administration sets cause short-term fluctuations in rate accuracy. The following graphs show typical performance of the system, as follows:

- Accuracy during various time periods over which fluid delivery is measured (trumpet curves).
- Delay in onset of fluid flow when infusion commences (start-up curves).

Trumpet curves are named for their characteristic shape. They display discrete accuracy data averaged over particular time periods or "observation windows", not continuous data versus operating time.

Over long observation windows, short-term fluctuations have little effect on accuracy, as represented by the flat part of the curve. As the observation window is reduced, short-term fluctuations have greater effect, as represented by the "mouth" of the trumpet. Knowledge of system accuracy over various observation windows may be of interest when certain drugs are being administered.

Because the clinical impact of short-term fluctuations on rate accuracy depends on the half-life of the drug being infused and on the degree of intravascular integration, the clinical effect cannot be determined from the trumpet curves alone. Knowledge of the start-up characteristics should also be considered.

The start-up curves represent continuous flow rate versus operating time for 2 hours from the start of the infusion. They exhibit the delay in onset of delivery due to mechanical compliance and provide a visual representation of uniformity. Trumpet curves are derived from the second hour of this data.
**Trumpet and Start-Up Curves** (Continued)

**Introduction** (Continued)

**Pump Module**

**Effects of Pressure Variations**

Under conditions of +100 mmHg pressure, the Pump Module typically exhibits a long-term accuracy offset of approximately -0.7% from mean values.

Under conditions of +300 mmHg pressure, the Pump Module typically exhibits a long-term accuracy offset of approximately -4.2% from mean values.

Under conditions of -100 mmHg pressure, the Pump Module typically exhibits a long-term accuracy offset of approximately +4.4% from mean values.

Resulting trumpet observation points typically track those of accuracy; therefore, no significant change in short-term variations result under these pressure conditions.

**Effects of Negative Solution Container Heights**

With a negative head height of -0.5 meters, the Pump Module typically exhibits a long-term accuracy offset of approximately -3.1% from mean values.

Resulting trumpet observation points typically track those of accuracy; therefore, no significant change in short-term variations result under negative head height conditions.

**Syringe Module**

Trumpet and start-up curves have been provided for 1.0 mL/h and 5.0 mL/h. Measurements for trumpet curve rates below 1.0 mL/h are not provided because of the difficulty in measuring extremely small volumes over a large duration of time. In this case, the linear relationship of the plunger position and velocity to syringe volume and rate is verified, and is a function of the accuracy of the design.
Measurements for trumpet curve rates above 5.0 mL/h are also not provided, as the volume of the syringe will be displaced in a very short time with a rate of up 999 mL/h. Accuracy, however, is assured with the design implementation.

Under conditions of -100 mmHg, +100 mmHg, and +300 mmHg pressures, the Syringe Module typically exhibits a long-term accuracy offset of approximately 0.2% or less from the mean value.
Trumpet and Start-Up Curves (Continued)

Graphs

Pump Module

NOTE: The plot range has been increased to ±100%, to allow visualization of the graph.
Trumpet and Start-Up Curves (Continued)

Graphs (Continued)

Pump Module (Continued)

Legend:
- Maximum rate error
- Overall rate error
- Minimum rate error
Trumpet and Start-Up Curves (Continued)

Graphs (Continued)

Syringe Module

Start-Up Curve at 1 mL/h (initial) 1 g/mL

Trumpet Curve at 1 mL/h (initial)

Legend:
- Maximum rate error
- Overall rate error
- Minimum rate error

Start-Up Curve at 5 mL/h (initial) 1 g/mL

Trumpet Curve at 5 mL/h (initial)

Legend:
- Maximum rate error
- Overall rate error
- Minimum rate error
The Pump Module and Syringe Module Technical Service Manuals are available from Cardinal Health. They include routine service schedules, interconnect diagrams, component parts lists and descriptions, test procedures, and other technical information, to assist qualified service personnel in repair and maintenance of the instrument's repairable components. Maintenance procedures are intended to be performed only by qualified personnel, using the Service Manuals, Maintenance Software and Maintenance Software User Manual.

**Artifacts**: It is normal for an infusion device to produce nonhazardous currents when infusing electrolytes. These currents vary proportional to the infusion device flow rate. When an ECG monitoring system is not functioning under optimal conditions, these currents may appear as artifacts, simulating actual ECG readings. To determine if ECG abnormalities are caused by patient condition or the ECG equipment, place the infusion device on hold. If the ECG readings become normal, the ECG equipment requires attention. Proper setup of the ECG equipment should eliminate these artifacts. Reference the appropriate ECG monitoring system documentation for instructions on setup and maintenance.

**Alarms, Errors, Messages**

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for the following system references:

- Alarms, Errors, Messages
- Audio Characteristics
- Definitions
- Radio Frequency Note
### Definitions

**Alert**  
A visual message to help reduce programming errors by indicating a Limit ("Soft" or "Hard") has been exceeded. A response is required before programming can continue.

**Clinical Advisory**  
A visual message when a designated drug is selected, to remind clinician of specific hospital/facility standards of practice when programming an IV medication. A specific Clinical Advisory and/or message can be associated with a selected drug within any of the patient care profiles. Clinical Advisories will not be displayed in Anesthesia mode.

### Audio Characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switchover</td>
<td>Six short beeps: secondary switching to primary. Two short beeps: bolus switching to continuous.</td>
<td>Variable volume; can be silenced and disabled in System Configuration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Alarms

#### Pump and Syringe Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Channel Disconnected</td>
<td>Module(s) disconnected while in operation or have a communication problem.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and clear message from screen, press CONFIRM soft key. Reattach module if desired, ensuring it is securely &quot;clicked&quot; into place at Module Release Latch. If alarm is still present, replace module with an operational instrument.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accumulated Air-in-Line</td>
<td>A large number of air bubbles smaller than current air-in-line limit has recently passed detector.</td>
<td>Clear air from line. To continue infusion, press <strong>RESET</strong> soft key and then <strong>RESTART</strong> key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air-in-Line</td>
<td>Air has been detected in administration set during an infusion. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Ensure tubing is properly installed in Air-in-Line Detector. If air is present, clear air from administration set. Press <strong>RESTART</strong> key, or press <strong>CHANNEL SELECT</strong> key and then <strong>START</strong> soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check IV Set</td>
<td>Administration set is not properly installed. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Close roller clamp, remove and reinstall administration set, close door, open roller clamp, and then press <strong>RESTART</strong> key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close Door</td>
<td>Door opened during an infusion. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Close door. Press <strong>RESTART</strong> key, or press <strong>CHANNEL SELECT</strong> key and then <strong>START</strong> soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flo-Stop Open - Close Door</td>
<td>Safety clamp device is in open position while door is open.</td>
<td>Close roller clamp on administration set or close door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occluded - Fluid Side/Empty Container</td>
<td>Indicates either upstream occlusion or empty container. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Clear occlusion on fluid side of instrument. If necessary, refill drip chamber. Press <strong>RESTART</strong> key, or press <strong>CHANNEL SELECT</strong> key and then <strong>START</strong> soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occluded - Patient Side</td>
<td>Increased back pressure sensed while infusing in pump delivery mode. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Clear occlusion. Press <strong>RESTART</strong> key, or press <strong>CHANNEL SELECT</strong> key and then <strong>START</strong> soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial Occlusion - Patient Side</td>
<td>Partial occlusion of patient side of IV line detected by Auto-Restart feature.</td>
<td>Clear occlusion. Press <strong>RESTART</strong> key, or press <strong>CHANNEL SELECT</strong> key and then <strong>START</strong> soft key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Alarms, Errors, Messages (Continued)

#### Pump Module (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pump Chamber Blocked</td>
<td>Blocked pump chamber detected.</td>
<td>Open door and inspect pump chamber. To open blockage, as required, massage tubing. To continue infusion, press <strong>RESET</strong> soft key and then <strong>RESTART</strong> key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restart Channel</td>
<td>Door opened and closed during an infusion. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Close door. Press <strong>RESTART</strong> key, or press <strong>CHANNEL SELECT</strong> key and then <strong>START</strong> soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Module paused for 2 minutes.</td>
<td>Press <strong>RESTART</strong> key, or press <strong>CHANNEL SELECT</strong> key and then <strong>START</strong> soft key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Syringe Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Occlusion</td>
<td>Increased back pressure sensed while infusing. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Clear occlusion. Press <strong>RESTART</strong> key, or press <strong>CHANNEL SELECT</strong> key and then <strong>START</strong> soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure Disc Installed</td>
<td>Pressure sensing disc installed during an infusion. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Press <strong>CONFIRM</strong> soft key and <strong>RESTART</strong> key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure Disc Removed</td>
<td>Pressure sensing disc removed. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Reinsert pressure sensing disc and press <strong>RESTART</strong> key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Alarms, Errors, Messages  (Continued)

Syringe Module  (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Syringe is empty. If syringe is not empty, other possibilities are:</td>
<td>➤ Set up new infusion or press CHANNEL OFF key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pressure sensing disc inappropriate/defective.</td>
<td>➤ Verify appropriate pressure sensing disc is in use and functioning properly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Syringe plunger travel impeded.</td>
<td>➤ Verify syringe plunger movement is unimpeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pressure transducer defective.</td>
<td>➤ If syringe is not empty and above actions do not correct alarm, contact qualified service personnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Syringe Adjustment Alarms

When a syringe installation problem is detected, a visual signal is displayed. Text in the display blinks to indicate the location of the problem.

-- Continued on Next Page --
### Alarms, Errors, Messages (Continued)

#### Alarms (Continued)

**Syringe Adjustment Alarms (Continued)**

- When problem is corrected, press **CONFIRM** soft key.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Syringe</td>
<td>Plunger grippers opened during infusion and then closed. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Securely lock plunger grippers, press <strong>CHANNEL SELECT</strong> key, and reselect syringe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syringe barrel clamp opened during infusion and then closed. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Securely lock syringe barrel clamp and press <strong>RESTART</strong> key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syringe plunger not captured while in idle state. System alarms after 30 seconds, to indicate potential siphoning condition.</td>
<td>Check for potential siphoning. Ensure administration set clamp (roller/slide) is in closed position. Securely lock plunger grippers over syringe plunger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Not Engaged</td>
<td>Drive system disengaged during operation.</td>
<td>Open and close plunger grippers and syringe barrel clamp. Ensure syringe is properly installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Pump and Syringe Modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Channel Error</td>
<td>Error detected. Operation stops on affected module.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and continue operation of unaffected module(s), press <strong>CONFIRM</strong> soft key. Replace module with an operational instrument, as required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Calibration Required</td>
<td>Error on infusing module indicating calibration is required. Infusion stops on affected module. <strong>CALIBRATE</strong> scrolls in Message Display.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and continue operation of unaffected module(s), press <strong>CONFIRM</strong> soft key. Replace module with an operational instrument, as required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Driver Head Error</td>
<td>Noninfusing module, with plunger grippers open, senses excessive pressure being applied downward on Drive Head. <strong>OCCLUSION</strong> scrolls in Message Display.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and continue normal operation, press <strong>CONFIRM</strong> soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthesia Mode</td>
<td>Anesthesia Mode discontinued when disconnected from AC.</td>
<td>Press CONFIRM soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolus Dose Complete</td>
<td>Module running in continuous infusion mode if programmed.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delay Complete</td>
<td>Delay time completed.</td>
<td>Press RESTART key, or press CHANNEL SELECT key and then START soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusion Complete</td>
<td>Current infusion completed.</td>
<td>Set up a new infusion or press CHANNEL OFF key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusion Complete - KVO</td>
<td>Programmed volume-to-be-infused delivered; module running at KVO rate.</td>
<td>Set up a new infusion or press CHANNEL OFF key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panel Locked</td>
<td>Tamper Resist feature is active and a key was pressed.</td>
<td>If appropriate, deactivate Tamper Resist feature using Tamper Resist Control on back of PC Unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panel Unlocked</td>
<td>Tamper Resist feature deactivated.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause</td>
<td>Pause control pressed; infusion stopped.</td>
<td>To resume infusion, press RESTART key, or press CHANNEL SELECT key and then START soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start time for next dose has passed.</td>
<td>Start of next dose passed.</td>
<td>Press CONFIRM soft key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Alarms, Errors, Messages (Continued)

### Messages (Continued)

#### Pump Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Checking Line</td>
<td>Patient-side occlusion occurred; Auto-Restart feature monitoring downstream pressure to determine if infusion can continue.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td>Secondary infusion in progress on indicated module.</td>
<td>None. When secondary VTBI=&quot;0&quot;, infusion will revert to programmed primary parameters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Syringe Module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>After Call Back</td>
<td>Infusion completed.</td>
<td>Press CONFIRM soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEOI (Near End of Infusion)</td>
<td>Syringe almost empty.</td>
<td>None. This is a timed event that can be set. To set or change this option, reference &quot;General Information&quot;, &quot;Configurable Settings&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Not Recognized</td>
<td>Installed syringe of unknown type and size.</td>
<td>Select and confirm correct syringe type and size, and then press CONFIRM; or use a syringe type and size that system can automatically and correctly identify.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To ensure the system remains in good operating condition, both regular and preventive maintenance inspections are required. Reference the Maintenance Software and Software User Manual (v8.1 or later) for detailed instructions.

### REGULAR INSPECTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROCEDURE</th>
<th>FREQUENCY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INSPECT FOR DAMAGE:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Surfaces</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keypad</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seal</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical Parts</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CLEANING</strong></td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>START-UP</strong></td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### WARNING

Failure to perform these inspections may result in improper instrument operation.

### CAUTION

Regular and preventive maintenance inspections should only be performed by qualified service personnel.

### Possible End of Infusion Messages and Alerts (Syringe Module)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KVO</th>
<th>VTBI</th>
<th>Delayed</th>
<th>PC Unit Display</th>
<th>Module Display</th>
<th>Audio / Visual Alert</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Yes / Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Yes / Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Yes / Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>Infusion Complete</td>
<td>Yes / Yes (if an After callback is scheduled)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KVO</th>
<th>VTBI</th>
<th>Delayed</th>
<th>PC Unit Display</th>
<th>Module Display</th>
<th>Audio / Visual Alert</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Yes / Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>Infusion Complete</td>
<td>Yes / Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Yes / Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Yes / Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Inspection Requirements

To ensure the system remains in good operating condition, both regular and preventive maintenance inspections are required. Reference the Maintenance Software and Software User Manual (v8.1 or later) for detailed instructions.
GETTING STARTED

INTRODUCTION ................................................................. 3-1
ATTACHING AND DETACHING DOSE REQUEST CORD .......... 3-2
PREPARING AND LOADING SYRINGE AND ADMINISTRATION SET ........................................................................ 3-3
Preparation Syringe and Administration Set .................. 3-3
Loading Syringe and Administration Set ..................... 3-4
Security Lock Key Positions ............................................. 3-6

PROGRAMMING

PREPARING INFUSION ....................................................... 3-7
Selecting Syringe Type and Size ...................................... 3-7
Priming ............................................................................. 3-8
Programming an Infusion ................................................ 3-10

INFUSION MODES ................................................................. 3-12
Programming Parameters ............................................. 3-12
Setting Up PCA Dose Only .............................................. 3-13
Setting Up Continuous Infusion Only ......................... 3-15
Setting Up PCA Dose + Continuous Infusion ............... 3-17
Setting Loading Dose Only .............................................. 3-19
Setting Bolus Dose ............................................................ 3-20
Stopping a Loading, PCA or Bolus Dose ..................... 3-22
Changing Programming Parameters During an Infusion .. 3-22
Viewing Patient History .................................................... 3-23
Clearing Patient History ................................................... 3-24
Viewing Drug Event History .......................................... 3-25
Configuring Dose Request Cord ................................. 3-26
Security Access Levels .................................................... 3-27
Disabling Security Access Code ................................. 3-28
Pausing Infusion ............................................................... 3-28
Changing Syringe and Restoring Infusion .................... 3-29
Stopping Infusion ............................................................ 3-31
Selecting Pressure Limit ................................................ 3-31
Viewing and Clearing Volume Infused ......................... 3-32

PCA PAUSE PROTOCOL FEATURE ................................. 3-32
PROGRAMMING AN INFUSION WITH PCA PAUSE PROTOCOL ENABLED ......................................................... 3-33
REVIEWING OR CHANGING PCA PAUSE ALARM LIMITS .............................................................................. 3-34
DISABLING PCA PAUSE ALARM ........................................ 3-36

GENERAL SETUP AND OPERATION

SYSTEM START-UP / SETUP ............................................... 3-37

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS .................................................. 3-39
General ........................................................................... 3-39
Administration Sets ....................................................... 3-40
Epidural Administration .................................................. 3-41
Dose Request Cord .......................................................... 3-41
Guardrails® Suite MX ....................................................... 3-42
ADMINISTRATION SET INFORMATION ............................. 3-42
COMPATIBLE SYRINGES .................................................... 3-43
# Table of Contents

**GENERAL INFORMATION** (Continued)

- FEATURES AND DISPLAYS ................................................................. 3-43
  - Features and Definitions ......................................................... 3-43
  - Operating Features, Controls, Indicators .................................. 3-48
  - Displays ..................................................................................... 3-49

- CONFIGURABLE SETTINGS ............................................................... 3-49

- SPECIFICATIONS AND SYMBOLS .................................................... 3-51
  - Specifications ........................................................................... 3-51
  - Symbols .................................................................................... 3-53

- TRUMPET AND START-UP CURVES .................................................. 3-55

**TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE**

- GENERAL ...................................................................................... 3-57

- ALARMS, ERRORS, MESSAGES ....................................................... 3-57
  - Definitions .................................................................................. 3-58
  - Alarms ....................................................................................... 3-58
  - Errors ....................................................................................... 3-60
  - Messages ................................................................................... 3-60

- INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS ......................................................... 3-62
Introduction

This Section of the Directions for Use (DFU) provides Alaris® Patient Controlled Analgesia Module, 8120 Series ("PCA Module") instructions and information. It is used in conjunction with the following:

- Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit ("PC Unit") Section of this DFU
- Administration Set Instructions for Alaris® product
- Maintenance software and User Manual for Alaris® System
- Drug Product Labeling
- Set Compatibility Card for PCA Module
- Technical Service Manual for PCA Module

The PCA Module is intended for facilities that utilize syringe pumps for the delivery of medications or fluids. The PCA Module is indicated for use on adults, pediatrics and neonates for continuous or intermittent delivery through clinically acceptable routes of administration; such as, intravenous (IV), subcutaneous or epidural. Up to two (2) PCA modules can be connected to the Alaris® System.

The PCA Module uses standard or pre-filled, single-use, disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and nondedicated administration sets with integrated anti-siphon valves, designed for use on syringe-type PCA devices. For specific administration set instructions, reference the directions for use provided with the set.

**Administration Sets / Syringes:** Reference “General Information” for specific administration set and syringe instructions.

- Administration Set Information
- Compatible Syringes

**Alarms, Errors, Messages:** Reference “Troubleshooting and Maintenance” for module-specific alarms, errors and messages.

**Contraindications:** None known.

**Electromagnetic Environment:** Reference "Appendix" Section of this DFU ("Regulations and Standards", Compliance").

---

**WARNING**

Read all instructions, for both the PCA Module and PC Unit, before using the Alaris® System.

---

**CAUTION**

Rx Only
Attaching and Detaching Dose Request Cord

The Dose Request Cord must be attached to the PCA Module when delivering a PCA dose or PCA + continuous dose infusion.

To attach Dose Request Cord:

- Insert latching connector into Dose Request Cord attachment. Red marking on latching connector should be aligned with red marking on Dose Request Cord attachment.

To detach Dose Request Cord:

- Hold body of latching connector and pull straight away, without twisting or turning, from Dose Request Cord attachment.
For instructions on how to go from checking in a PCA Module to preparing it for an infusion setup, reference “General Setup and Operation”.

**Preparing Syringe and Administration Set**

1. Prepare syringe (reference “General Information”, “Compatible Syringes”) in accordance with manufacturer’s directions for use.
2. Prepare administration set (reference Set Compatibility Card, provided separately) in accordance with manufacturer’s directions for use.
3. Attach upper fitting of administration set to syringe tip.

**WARNING**

Use only standard, single-use, disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and non-dedicated administration sets with integrated anti-siphon valves, designed for use on syringe-type PCA pumps. The use of any other syringe or administration set may cause improper instrument operation, resulting in inaccurate fluid delivery, pressure sensing, or other potential hazards. For a list of compatible syringes, reference “General Information”, “Compatible Syringes”. For a list of compatible administration sets, reference the Set Compatibility Card (provided separately).
Preparation and Loading Syringe and Administration Set (Continued)

**Loading Syringe and Administration Set**

**WARNINGS**
- **Before loading** the syringe, check it for damage or defects.
- Ensure syringe barrel, flange, and plunger are installed and secured correctly. Failure to **install syringe correctly** can result in uncontrolled fluid flow to the patient, and may cause serious injury or death.
- **Before loading or unloading** the syringe, always turn off fluid flow to the patient, using the tubing clamp or stopcock. Uncontrolled fluid flow can occur when the administration set is not clamped or turned off, and may cause serious injury or death.

**CAUTION**

When initially **loading** the syringe, allow for the volume of fluid contained in the administration set and retained in the syringe at the end of an infusion, as this “dead space” will not be infused.

1. Open syringe barrel clamp.
   a. Pull syringe barrel clamp out and hold.
   b. Rotate clamp to left (clockwise or counter clockwise) until it clears syringe chamber.
   c. Gently release clamp.
2. Raise drive head to its fully extended position.
   a. Twist gripper control clockwise and hold in position. 
   b. While holding gripper control in open position, raise drive head to full extension.
   c. Gently release gripper control.

3. Insert syringe (from front of instrument) by sliding flat edge of syringe barrel flange between barrel flange grippers.

4. Lock syringe in place.
   a. Pull syringe barrel clamp out and hold.
   b. Rotate clamp to right (clockwise or counter clockwise) until it lines up with syringe.
   c. Gently release clamp against syringe.
5. Lower drive head and lock plunger in place with plunger grippers.
   a. Twist gripper control clockwise and hold in position.  
   b. While holding gripper control in open position, gently lower drive head until it makes contact with plunger flange.
   c. Gently release gripper control.
   d. Ensure plunger grippers lock and hold plunger in place.

NOTE:

The gripper control is spring loaded. When twisted to the open position and then released, it (and the plunger grippers) will return to the closed position.

Security Lock Key Positions

There are 3 key positions associated with the security lock:

- UNLOCK unlocks security door. Key must be in this position when loading or changing a syringe.
- PROGRAM allows for changes in programming without unlocking security door or interrupting current infusion.
- LOCK locks security door. Key must be in this position to start an infusion.
References throughout this procedure to specific drugs and
drug doses are for illustration purposes only. Refer to specific
drug product labeling for information concerning appropriate
administration techniques and dosages.

Reference “General Information”, “Features and Displays” and
the PC Unit Section of this DFU for information on the
following:
• Displays
• Operating Features, Controls, Indicators

## Preparing Infusion

### Selecting Syringe Type and Size

At the start of an infusion program, the system prompts user
to select and confirm the syringe type and size.

**WARNING**

Ensure the displayed syringe manufacturer and size correctly
identifies the installed syringe. Mismatches may cause an under-
infusion or over-infusion to the patient that could result in serious
injury and/or death. For a list of compatible syringes, reference
“General Information”, “Compatible Syringes”. If the installed syringe is
displayed and selected, but is not
recognized, servicing is required
(reference “Service Information” in
“Appendix” Section of this DFU).

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key. Key must be in PROGRAM
position.
Selecting Syringe Type and Size (Continued)

2. Press soft key next to installed syringe type and size.
   - Selection is highlighted.
   - If installed syringe is not listed, press **ALL SYRINGES** soft key and select syringe from list. 

3. To accept, press **CONFIRM** soft key.
   - Drug Library screen displays.

NOTE:

① The system automatically detects the syringe size, and lists syringe types and sizes that most closely match the installed syringe. If the syringe is not recognized, **Syringe not recognized** displays.

Priming

The Priming option can be enabled at the time the Alaris® System is configured for use. The Priming selection (**PRIME** soft key) is available only after the syringe type and medication selection (prior to infusion mode selection).

**WARNING**

When priming:

- Ensure patient is not connected.
- Ensure air is expelled from line prior to beginning infusion (unexpelled air in line could have serious consequences).

Failure to prime correctly can delay infusion delivery and cause the total volume to be infused to read higher than the actual total delivered to the patient.

**CAUTION**

During priming, the pressure limit alarms are temporarily increased to their maximum level.
Selecting Syringe Type and Size (Continued)

Priming (Continued)

1. Press **OPTIONS** key.

2. Press **Prime Set with Syringe** soft key.

3. Press and hold **PRIME** soft key until fluid flows and priming of syringe administration set is complete.

   • Volume used during priming is displayed but not added to VTBI.
Preparing Infusion  (Continued)

4. When priming is complete, release PRIME soft key.
5. To return to main screen, press EXIT soft key.

• **Guardrails Drug Setup** screen displays.

6. Select infusion mode.

---

**NOTE:**

1. Fluid is delivered during priming only while the PRIME soft key is pressed. Each press of the PRIME soft key delivers up to 2 mL of priming/fluid per continuous press. To deliver additional amounts, press the PRIME soft key again.

---

**Programming an Infusion**

1. Perform steps in “Getting Started”, “Preparing Syringe and Administration Set”.
2. Perform following steps (reference PC Unit Section of this DFU, “General Setup and Operation”, “Startup”):
   a. Power on system.
   b. Choose Yes or No to New Patient?
   c. Select profile, if required.
   d. Enter patient identifier, if required.
3. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
4. Unlock security door or set key to PROGRAM position.
5. Confirm time of day or change time if necessary.
6. Perform the following steps:
   a. Load syringe and administration set (reference “Getting Started”, “Loading Syringe and Administration Set”).
   b. Select and confirm syringe type and size (reference “Selecting Syringe Type and Size”).

7. Press the soft key next to the desired drug.
   - Drug/Concentration screen appears.

8. Press the soft key next to the desired concentration.
   - Drug/Concentration confirmation screen appears.
   - To view additional drugs/concentrations, press PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN soft keys.
   - Facility may choose to prepopulate standard drug concentrations, or leave an open entry (__, __ mL) and allow clinician to enter drug amount and diluent volume.

   - If Yes was selected and facility has defined a Clinical Advisory for that drug, a message appears. To continue programming, press CONFIRM soft key.

10. Verify parameters are correct and press NEXT soft key to confirm.

NOTES:

1. If the programmed “__ / __ mL” concentration is outside the soft limit, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If the Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if the No soft key is pressed, the infusion must be reprogrammed.

2. If the programmed “__ / __ mL” concentration is outside the hard limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. The drug amount and diluent volume must be reprogrammed.

Infusion Modes

Programming Parameters

The PCA Module uses the following programming parameters, depending on infusion mode selected. Reference “General Information”, “Features and Definitions” for infusion mode definitions and features.

- **PCA Dose**: patient self-administered dose.
- **Lockout Interval**: programmed time elapse between availability of PCA doses.
- **Continuous Dose**: basal rate dose.
- **Max Limit**: (optional) total amount of drug which can be infused over a specified time period.
- **Loading Dose**: (optional) bolus dose infused prior to initiation of PCA infusion.
- **Bolus Dose**: (optional) additional dose programmed after the initiation of PCA infusion.

NOTE:

1. When the PC Unit is in the Infusion Mode Selection, Infusion Setup or Bolus Setup screens, a patient dose request from the Dose Request Cord will be handled as an unmet demand.
**Infusion Modes** (Continued)

### Setting Up PCA Dose Only

1. Perform steps in “Preparing Infusion”.
2. Press **PCA Dose Only** soft key from Infusion Mode screen.

3. To enter PCA dose, use numeric data entry keys.

4. To enter lockout interval, press **LOCKOUT INTERVAL** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

5. To enter maximum limit, press **MAX LIMIT** soft key and then **Yes** soft key.
6. Enter maximum limit using numeric data entry keys.

7. To enter loading dose, press LOAD DOSE soft key, press Yes soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

8. Verify parameters are correct and press CONFIRM soft key.

   • If programmed parameters are outside soft limit, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if No soft key is pressed, infusion must be reprogrammed.

   • If programmed parameters are outside hard limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion must be reprogrammed.

9. Close and lock security door.

10. Verify parameters on second nurse summary screen are correct and press START soft key.

    • Infusion mode and PCA drug name scroll in Channel Message Display. If a loading dose has been entered, scrolls DELIVERING LOAD.

    • Main Display alternates between volume remaining and PCA drug name with infusion mode.

    • When PCA dose is delivered:

        ♦ Green Infusing Status Indicator illuminates.

        ♦ Rate display flashes “_ _ _ _ _”.

        ♦ DELIVERING PCA scrolls in channel message display.

        ♦ When PCA dose is complete, PCA COMPLETE scrolls in Channel Message Display.

NOTES:

1. Time (in hours) associated with Max Limit is automatically entered based on setup in system configuration.

2. Loading dose is included in volume infused but is not included in Max Limit.
1. Perform steps in “Preparing Infusion”.

2. Press **CONTINUOUS INFUSION** soft key from Infusion Mode screen.

3. To enter continuous infusion dose, press **CONT DOSE** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

4. To enter maximum limit, press **MAX LIMIT** soft key, press **Yes** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
5. To enter loading dose, press LOAD DOSE soft key, press Yes soft key and use numeric data entry keys. ②

6. Verify parameters are correct and press CONFIRM soft key.
   - If programmed parameters are outside soft limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if No soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
   - If programmed parameters are outside hard limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

7. Close and lock security door.

8. Verify programming parameters are correct and press START soft key.
   - Green Infusing Status Indicator illuminates.
   - Infusion mode and drug name scroll in Channel Message Display. If a loading dose has been entered, DELIVERING LOAD scrolls.
   - Volume infused in mL/h in Rate Display.
   - Main Display alternates between volume remaining and infusion mode with drug name.

NOTES:
① Time (in hours) associated with Max Limit is automatically entered based on setup in system configuration.
② Loading dose is included in volume infused but is not included in Max Limit.
1. Perform steps in “Preparing Infusion”.

2. Press **PCA DOSE + CONTINUOUS** soft key from Infusion Mode screen.

3. To enter PCA dose, press **PCA DOSE** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

4. To enter lockout interval, press **LOCKOUT INTERVAL** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

5. To enter continuous dose, press **CONT DOSE** soft key, and use numeric data entry keys.

6. To enter maximum limit, press **MAX LIMIT** soft key, press **Yes** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.
7. To enter loading dose, press **LOAD DOSE** soft key, press **Yes** soft key and use numeric data entry keys.

8. Verify parameters are correct and press **CONFIRM** soft key.

   - If programmed parameters are outside soft limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If **Yes** soft key is pressed, programming continues; if **No** soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

   - If programmed parameters are outside hard limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

9. Close and lock security door.

10. Verify parameters on second nurse summary screen are correct and press **START** soft key.

    - During PCA dose + continuous infusion:
      - Green Infusing Status Indicator illuminates.
      - **DELIVERING PCA** scrolls in Channel Message Display when initiated. Continuous and PCA drug name scrolls in Channel Message Display between PCA doses.
      - Volume infused for continuous dose is displayed in mL/h in Rate Display.
      - Main Display alternates between volume remaining and infusion mode with PCA drug name.
      - When PCA dose is complete, **PCA COMPLETE** scrolls in Channel Message Display and resumes continuous dose.

**NOTES:**

1. Time (in hours) associated with **Max Limit** is automatically entered based on setup in system configuration.
2. Loading dose is included in VTBI but is not included in **Max Limit**.
The following procedures should be used when setting a **LOADING DOSE ONLY** using the Drug Library.

### Setting Loading Dose from Infusion Mode Screen

1. Perform steps in “Preparing Infusion”.
2. Press **LOADING DOSE ONLY** soft key from Infusion Mode screen.
3. To enter dose value, use numeric data entry keys.
4. Verify dose value is correct and then press **CONFIRM** soft key.
   - If programmed loading dose is outside soft limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If **Yes** soft key is pressed, programming continues; if **No** soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
   - If programmed loading dose is outside soft limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If **Yes** soft key is pressed, programming continues; if **No** soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.
5. Close and lock security door.
6. Verify parameters on summary screen are correct and press **START** soft key.
   - **DELIVERING LOAD** scrolls in Channel Message Display.
   - Infusion mode and drug name alternate with VTBI in Main Display.
   - When loading dose is complete, **The Loading Dose has Completed** appears on Main Display.
The following procedures should be used only when setting a **BOLUS DOSE** using the Drug Library.

1. Press **CHANNEL SELECT**.

2. Press **BOLUS DOSE** soft key.

### Setting Loading Dose

**Setting Loading Dose from Infusion Mode Screen**

7. Press **CONFIRM** soft key.

   • Upon pressing Channel Select on PCA Module, Infusion Mode screen becomes available for selection of infusion mode.

### Infusion Modes (Continued)

**Setting Loading Dose Only**

7. Press **CONFIRM** soft key.

   The loading dose has completed.

   >Press **CONFIRM**

**NOTE:**

1. Loading dose is included in the VTBI but is not included in the Max Limit.

### Setting Bolus Dose

The following procedures should be used only when setting a **BOLUS DOSE** using the Drug Library.

1. Press **CHANNEL SELECT**.

2. Press **BOLUS DOSE** soft key.

**Summary**

- **Morphine**
  - Cont. Dose: 2 mg/h
  - Max Limit: 30 mg/4 h
  - [Conc]: 1 mg/mL

>Press **START to Close Summary**
Infusion Modes (Continued)

Setting Bolus Dose (Continued)

3. Set key to PROGRAM position or enter 4-digit authorization code and press CONFIRM soft key.

4. To enter dose value, use numeric data entry keys.

5. Press CONFIRM soft key.

   • If programmed bolus dose is outside soft limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. If Yes soft key is pressed, programming continues; if No soft key is pressed, infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

   • If programmed bolus dose is outside hard limit for that care area, a prompt appears before programming can continue. Infusion needs to be reprogrammed.

6. If Authorization Code is disabled, door must be locked prior to starting bolus dose.

7. Verify dose value is correct and then press START soft key:

   • Delivering Bolus scrolls in Channel Message Display
   • Bolus and drug name alternate with VTBI in Main Display
   • When bolus dose is complete, BOLUS COMPLETE scrolls in Channel Message Display.
   • Programmed infusion resumes.

NOTE:

1. The BOLUS DOSE soft key is only available once an infusion has begun in PCA dose only, continuous infusion, or PCA + continuous infusion modes.
Infusion Modes (Continued)

Stopping a Loading, PCA or Bolus Dose

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.

2. Press STOP LOAD, STOP PCA or STOP BOLUS soft key as applicable.

3. To stop dose and resume current program, press Yes soft key.

NOTE:
① Available soft key and stop confirmation screen are dependent on the type of dose currently infusing and current infusion mode.

Changing Programming Parameters During an Infusion

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.

2. Press PROGRAM soft key.

3. Set key to program position or if Authorization Code is enabled, enter 4-digit code.

4. Press CHANGE MODE soft key.
5. Select desired infusion mode.

6. Continue programming. Reference applicable procedure:
   - Setting Up PCA Dose Only
   - Setting Up Continuous Infusion Only
   - Setting Up PCA + Continuous Infusion

7. Verify or change program settings and press CONFIRM soft key.

8. Close and lock door.

9. Verify programming parameters on summary screen are correct and press START soft key.

**NOTE:**

① Previously programmed values are carried over to new program.

**Viewing Patient History**

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.

2. From Main Display, press OPTIONS key.

3. Press Patient History soft key.
Infusion Modes  (Continued)

Viewing Patient History  (Continued)

4. To select desired time period, press ZOOM soft key.  

5. To view detailed patient history, press DETAIL soft key.

6. To return to main patient history, press MAIN HISTORY soft key.

7. To return to Main Display, press EXIT soft key. 

NOTES:

① Total drug delivered includes applicable loading dose, PCA dose, continuous dose, and bolus dose. Total drug delivered does not include priming volume.

② Patient history stores a rolling 24-hour log and is automatically cleared upon selection of New Patient?, Yes during start-up or upon changing drug selection in Drug Library.

Clearing Patient History

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.

2. From Main Display, press OPTIONS key.

3. Press Patient History soft key.

4. Press CLEAR HISTORY soft key.
   • A confirmation screen appears.

3-24 Programming

Alaris® System Directions for Use
Patient Controlled Analgesia Module Section
Infusion Modes  (Continued)

Clearing Patient History  (Continued)

5. To continue and clear patient history, press Yes soft key. To cancel and return to patient history, press No soft key.

6. Once patient history is cleared, last 24 hours of patient history data may be retrieved and viewed. To retrieve last 24 hours, select 24 h Totals soft key from Patient History screen.


7. To return to Patient History screen, press SHIFT TOTALS soft key.

NOTE:

① The 24 h Totals soft key appears only if the shift total is cleared and additional patient history information exists (up to the previous 24 hours).

Viewing Drug Event History

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.

2. From Main Display, press OPTIONS key.

3. Press Drug Event History soft key.
The Dose Request Cord can be configured to provide both audio and visual prompts to the patient. Visual prompts are provided through the LED indicator on the Dose Request Cord. Default configuration for the Dose Request Cord is established in the system configuration.

To change Dose Request Cord configuration:

1. Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key.
2. From Main Display, press **OPTIONS** key.
3. Press **Dose Request Setup** soft key.

**NOTE:**

1. The **Drug Event History** stores approximately 12 hours of events and is automatically cleared upon selection of **New Patient?**, **Yes** during start-up or upon changing drug in Drug Library.

**Configuring Dose Request Cord**

The Dose Request Cord can be configured to provide both audio and visual prompts to the patient. Visual prompts are provided through the LED indicator on the Dose Request Cord. Default configuration for the Dose Request Cord is established in the system configuration.

To change Dose Request Cord configuration:

1. Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key.
2. From Main Display, press **OPTIONS** key.
3. Press **Dose Request Setup** soft key.
Infusion Modes (Continued)

Configuring Dose Request Cord (Continued)

4. Review and select Profile soft key for desired operation of Dose Request Cord.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose Request Cord Audio - Single Beep</th>
<th>Profile 1</th>
<th>Profile 2</th>
<th>Profile 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Met demands only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dose Request Cord LED Indicator:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA Available</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA Delivery</td>
<td>“ON-FLASHING”</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lockout Interval</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Press CONFIRM soft key.

Security Access Levels

The security access level can be configured to provide varying levels of access to the device. Security access is accomplished either through the use of the key or a 4-digit authorization code.

Default configuration for the security access level is established for each profile or care area and can be changed in the system configuration. The 4-digit authorization code is established and can be changed in the system configuration.

The 4-digit authorization code is configured for each profile with Level 2 or Level 3 security access.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Security Access Level</th>
<th>Initial Programming</th>
<th>Setting Bolus Dose</th>
<th>Subsequent Programming</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>Key</td>
<td>Key</td>
<td>Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 2</td>
<td>Key</td>
<td>Code or Key</td>
<td>Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 3</td>
<td>Key</td>
<td>Code or Key</td>
<td>Code or Key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Infusion Modes (Continued)

Disabling Security Access Code

The security code may be disabled for a specific infusion by using the following procedure:

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. From Main Display, press OPTIONS key.
4. Press DISABLE CODE soft key.
5. Press CONFIRM soft key.
   • Security access code will remain disabled until New Patient?, Yes is selected in infusion start-up or if instrument remains powered off for more than 8 hours.

Pausing Infusion

1. Press PAUSE key.
   OR

-- Continued on Next Page --
Infusion Modes (Continued)

Pausing Infusion (Continued)

From **Second Nurse Summary** screen, press **PAUSE** soft key.

- **PAUSE** scrolls in Channel Message Display.
- **PAUSED** appears on Main Display.
- Yellow Standby Status Indicator illuminates.
- After 2 minutes, **PAUSE-RESTART CHANNEL** visual and audio prompts begin, and yellow Standby Status Indicator flashes.

2. To reinitiate infusion:
   - Press **RESTART** key.
   - OR
   - Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key and then press **START** soft key on Main Display.

Changing Syringe and Restoring Infusion

1. If syringe requires replacement:
   a. Unlock security door.
   b. Remove existing syringe and prepare new syringe (reference “Getting Started”, “Preparing and Loading Syringe and Administration Set”).
   c. Load syringe and administration set (reference “Getting Started”, “Preparing and Loading Syringe and Administration Set”, “Loading Syringe and Administration Set”).
   d. Select syringe type and size (reference “Preparing Infusion”, “Selecting Syringe Type and Size”).
Infusion Modes (Continued)

Changing Syringe and Restoring Infusion (Continued)

2. To restart infusion using restored parameters, press **RESTORE** soft key and continue with next step.

   **OR**

   To start a new infusion, select drug from Drug Library and follow steps for “Infusion Modes”.


4. Prime administration set (reference “Preparing Infusion”, “Priming”).

5. For restored parameters, verify parameters are valid and press **CONFIRM** soft key.

6. Close and lock security door.

7. Verify programming parameters on summary screen are correct and press **START** soft key.

**NOTES:**

1. If drug and/or drug concentration is different from previous syringe, attach and prime new administration set.

2. To change a restored parameter:
   a. Press applicable soft key.
   b. Enter desired parameter using numeric data entry keys.
   c. Press **CONFIRM** soft key.
Infusion Modes (Continued)

Stopping Infusion

Press and hold CHANNEL OFF key until a beep is heard, approximately 1.5 seconds.  

NOTE:
① If no other channel is active, the system powers down when the CHANNEL OFF key is released.

Selecting Pressure Limit

1. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. Press OPTIONS key.
3. Press Pressure Limit soft key.  

4. To select a pressure limit, press appropriate soft key.
5. Press CONFIRM soft key.

NOTE:
① Option to change pressure limit can be selected:
   - after drug is selected, and before infusion mode is selected and infusion starts, or
   - after infusion starts.
Infusion Modes (Continued)

Viewing and Clearing Volume Infused

1. To view volume infused, press VOLUME INFUSED soft key from Main Display.
   - Total volume infused, and time and date volume infused was last cleared, is displayed for each channel. ①

2. To clear volume infused: ②③
   - If only selected channels are to be cleared, press soft key next to applicable channel(s) and press CLEAR CHANNEL soft key.
   - If all channels are to be cleared, press CLEAR ALL soft key.

3. To return to main screen, press MAIN SCREEN soft key.

NOTES:
① Date format is year-month-day.
② If no key is pressed, main screen appears after 30 seconds.
③ Clearing volume infused on a PCA Module does not clear patient history.

PCA Pause Protocol Feature

The PCA Pause Protocol is an optional and hospital configurable feature that is intended to align with the healthcare facility’s current protocol for patient monitoring during PCA Therapy. ①

NOTE:
① All device programming, data entry and validation of PCA Pause Protocol parameters are performed by the trained healthcare professional according to hospital-defined protocol/procedure or a physician’s order.
Programming an Infusion with PCA Pause Protocol Enabled

1. Perform steps 1-8 in “Preparing Infusion”, “Programming an Infusion”.

2. Confirm drug and concentration selections and press Yes soft key.

3. If facility has chosen to enable optional PCA Pause Protocol, review Clinical Advisory. To continue, press CONFIRM soft key.

   To activate PCA Pause Protocol, attach and start an Alaris® EtCO₂ Module and/or Alaris® SpO₂ Module per facility protocol.

   • Verify appropriate monitoring modules are attached to PC Unit and press CONFIRM soft key.①

4. Verify parameters are correct and press NEXT soft key to confirm.

   • Clinical Advisory appears.

5. Press CONFIRM soft key.②

6. Start applicable infusion, as described in following procedures: ③

   Setting Up PCA Dose Only
   Setting Up Continuous Infusion Only
   Setting Up PCA Dose + Continuous Infusion
   Setting Up Loading Dose Only
NOTES:
① If a monitoring module(s) is not attached or started, the PCA Pause Protocol will not activate.
② To review PCA pause limits, reference “Reviewing or Changing PCA Pause Alarm Limits”.
③ Once the START soft key is pressed, the Main Display screen alternates between volume remaining (VTBI - Volume to be Infused) and PCA drug name with the infusion code.

- The Main Display displays **PCA Pause Protocol ON**.
- If Patient ID is entered, **Patient ID** alternates with **PCA Pause Protocol ON**.

### Programming an Infusion with PCA Pause Protocol Enabled (Continued)

#### Reviewing or Changing PCA Pause Alarm Limits

1. From Main Display press **CHANNEL SELECT**.
2. Press **OPTIONS** key.
3. Select **PCA Pause Limits**.
4. Verify PCA pause limits as per facility protocol or physician order.

5. To change PCA pause limits, press soft key that corresponds to alarm limit and enter a value within acceptable range. 

6. Press CONFIRM soft key.

7. Press START soft key.

**NOTE:**

1. The acceptable range for PCA Pause Protocol is configurable and defined by the hospital within the data set using the Guardrails® Suite MX.

The **PCA PAUSE LIMITS** must be lower than the **SPO2/ETCO2 ALARM LIMITS**. A prompt is provided if the **PCA PAUSE LIMITS** must be modified.

---

**Reviewing or Changing PCA Pause Alarm Limits (Continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PCA Pause Limits</th>
<th>SPO2/ETCO2 Alarm Limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SPO2 LOW</strong></td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ETCO2</strong></td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RR LOW</strong></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SPO2</strong></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

>Press CONFIRM to Apply Changes

| DISABLE SPO2 | CONFIRM | DISABLE ETCO2 |

>Enter a Pause Limit Between 2 - 4

| DISABLE SPO2 | CONFIRM | DISABLE ETCO2 |

>Press CONFIRM to Apply Changes

| DISABLE SPO2 | CONFIRM | DISABLE ETCO2 |

>Enter a Pause Limit Between 2 - 4

| DISABLE SPO2 | CONFIRM | DISABLE ETCO2 |
Disabling PCA Pause Alarm

1. From Main Display press CHANNEL SELECT.
2. Press OPTIONS key.
3. Select PCA Pause Limits.

4. Press DISABLE SPO2 or DISABLE ETCO2 soft key, as appropriate.

5. Press CONFIRM soft key.
6. Press START soft key.
7. To enable PCA Pause feature, follow steps 1-3 above and press ENABLE SPO2 or ENABLE ETCO2 soft key, as appropriate.

NOTES:
① Disabling SpO2 or ETCO2 from this screen will discontinue the PCA Pause feature only without interrupting monitoring functionality.
② Once disabled, the alarm limits will be grayed out and will not be editable.
System Start-Up / Setup

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU, “General Setup and Operation”, for various “system” start-up and setup procedures.
• The PCA Module is designed to **stop fluid flow under alarm conditions**. Periodic patient monitoring must be performed to ensure the infusion is proceeding as expected. It is a **positive displacement delivery system**, capable of developing positive fluid pressures to overcome widely varying resistances to flow encountered in practice, including resistances to flow imposed by small gauge catheters, filters and intra-arterial infusion. It is neither designed nor intended to detect infiltrations and will not alarm under infiltration conditions.

• The use of positive displacement infusion devices ported together with **gravity flow infusion** systems into a common IV site may impede the flow of common “gravity only” systems, affecting their performance. Hospital/facility personnel must ensure the performance of the common IV site is satisfactory under these circumstances.

• **Each time the Alaris® System is turned on**, verify and/or set the monitoring mode, resistance alert, and/or pressure alarm limit. If the monitoring mode, resistance alert, and/or pressure alarm limit are not verified, the instrument may not operate within the desired occlusion detection parameter(s).
• Use only standard, single-use, disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and non-dedicated administration sets with integrated anti-siphon valves, designed for use on syringe-type PCA pumps. The use of any other syringe or administration set may cause improper instrument operation, resulting in an inaccurate fluid delivery or pressure sensing, or other potential hazards. For a list of compatible syringes, reference “Compatible Syringes”. For a list of compatible sets, reference the Set Compatibility Card (provided separately).

• Before loading or unloading the syringe, always turn off fluid flow to the patient, using the tubing clamp or stopcock. Uncontrolled fluid flow can occur when the administration set is not clamped or turned off, and may cause serious injury or death.

• When an occlusion occurs, there is a risk of infusing pressurized buildup of infusates upon correction of the occlusion. To avoid an inadvertent bolus, relieve the pressure before restarting the infusion.

• When priming:
  ♦ Ensure patient is not connected.
  ♦ Ensure air is expelled from line prior to beginning infusion (unexpelled air in line could have serious consequences).

Failure to prime correctly can delay infusion delivery and cause the total volume to be infused to read higher than the actual total delivered to the patient.

• Ensure the syringe manufacturer and syringe size displayed matches syringe manufacturer and syringe size installed in the PCA Module. Mismatches may cause an under-infusion or over-infusion to the patient that could result in serious injury and/or death. For a list of compatible syringes, reference “Compatible Syringes”.

• Discard if packaging is not intact or protector caps are unattached.
Warnings and Cautions (Continued)

Administration Sets (Continued)

**CAUTION**

Before operating instrument, verify that administration set is **free from kinks and installed correctly** in instrument.

## Epidural Administration

**WARNINGS**

- **Epidural administration** of drugs other than those indicated for epidural use could result in serious injury to the patient.

- It is strongly recommended that the syringe, administration set, and PCA Module used for **epidural drug delivery** be clearly differentiated from those used for other types of administration.

- The Alaris® System can be used for epidural administration of **anesthetic and analgesic drugs**. This application is only appropriate when using anesthetics and analgesics labeled for continuous epidural administration and catheters intended specifically for epidural use. Use only standard or pre-filled, single-use, disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and non-dedicated administration sets with integrated anti-siphon valves, designed for use on syringe-type PCA devices without a ‘Y’ connector or injection port, for epidural infusions.

  - Epidural administration of **anesthetic drugs**: Use indwelling catheters specifically indicated for short-term (96 hours or less) anesthetic epidural drug delivery.

  - Epidural administration of **analgesic drugs**: Use indwelling catheters specifically indicated for either short-term or long-term analgesic epidural drug delivery.

## Dose Request Cord

**WARNING**

Only the **patient should press** the Dose Request Cord.
WARNINGS

• The Guardrails® Suite MX incorporates dosing limits and instrument configuration parameters based on hospital/facility protocol. The software adds a test of reasonableness to drug programming based on the limits defined by the hospital/facility. Qualified personnel must ensure the appropriateness of drug dosing limits, drug compatibility, and instrument performance, as part of the overall infusion. Potential hazards include drug interactions, inaccurate delivery rates and pressure alarms, and nuisance alarms.

• When loading a data set with the Guardrails® Suite MX, ensure the correct profile (for patient care area) is selected prior to starting an infusion. Failure to use the appropriate profile could cause serious consequences.

Administration Set Information

The PCA Module uses standard, single-use, disposable syringes (with luer-lock connectors) and administration sets with anti-siphon valves, designed for use on syringe-type PCA pumps.

• For specific administration set instructions, reference directions for use provided with set.
• For a list of compatible syringes, reference “Compatible Syringes”.
• For a list of compatible administration sets, reference Set Compatibility Card (provided separately).
• Use aseptic techniques when handling sets and syringes.
• Administration sets are supplied with a sterile and nonpyrogenic fluid path for one-time use. Do not resterilize.
• For administration set replacement interval, refer to facility protocol and/or government standards (such as, CDC guidelines in United States).
• Discard administration set per facility protocol.
• For IV push medication (put instrument on hold), clamp tubing above port.
• Flush port(s) per facility protocol.
Compatible Syringes

The PCA Module is calibrated and labeled for use with the following single-use disposable luer-lock syringes. Use only the syringe size and type specified on the Main Display. The full list of permitted syringe models is dependent on the PCA Module’s software version.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manufacturer</th>
<th>20cc</th>
<th>30cc</th>
<th>35cc</th>
<th>50cc</th>
<th>60cc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B-D Plastipak</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMS Pump Jet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monoject</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terumo</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES:

① Syringe variability may impact occlusion pressure sensing. The variability may reduce the device’s time to alarm and/or may require that a higher alarm pressure limit be programmed.

② Prefilled Morphine Sulfate 1 mg/ml.

Features and Displays

Features and Definitions

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system features and definitions.

Auto Pressure Limit Adjustment  When a bolus is delivered, pressure alarm limits are temporarily raised to maximum limit.

Auto Syringe Identification  System automatically detects syringe size and narrows down syringe selection list.

Bolus Delivery Rate  Rate at which PCA, bolus and loading doses (boluses) will be infused.

Bolus Dose  Allows an additional amount of medication to be programmed once PCA infusion has begun. Current PCA infusion resumes following delivery of a bolus dose.

Continuous Dose  Basal rate dose.
Features and Displays (Continued)

Dose Request Cord
When attached, Dose Request Cord allows a patient to self-administer a PCA dose to be delivered according to programmed PCA parameters. Dose Request Cord features an indicator light which can be configured to provide feedback to patient on requested PCA doses. Dose Request Cord is enabled in PCA only and PCA + continuous modes.

Drug Event History
Records and displays sequential device events for a typical 12 hours, subject to change upon usage and number of modules.

Event Logging
Event Logging records instrument operations.

Guardrails® Drug Library
("Drug Library")
When Profiles feature is enabled, it provides a hospital-defined list of drugs and concentrations appropriate for use in as many as 10 profiles. Drug Library use automates programming steps, including drug name, drug amount and diluent volume, and activates hospital-established best-practice limits. A data set that includes a Drug Library is required prior to using PCA Module.

Guardrails® Limit ("Limit")
A programming Limit or best-practice guideline determined by hospital/health system and entered into system’s data set. Dose Limits can be defined by hospital/health system as “Hard” or “Soft” Limits.
- A Hard Limit is a programmed Limit that cannot be overridden.
- A Soft Limit is a programmed Limit that can be overridden.

Initial Value
An optional and editable starting value for PCA dose, continuous dose, lockout internal or maximum limit.

Loading Dose
Allows a bolus infusion to be programmed prior to initiation of PCA infusion. May be programmed from Infusion Modes menu or applicable PCA, PCA + continuous, or continuous only programming screen prior to start of a new PCA infusion program.

Lockout Interval
Allows programming of a predetermined interval of time that must elapse between delivery of PCA doses.
Max Dose Limit
Optional configuration that limits total amount of drug allowed to be delivered to patient in a defined period (1, 2 or 4 hours).

- This setting should be configured in data set before Drug Library is developed. Once drugs are in Profile PCA Drug Library, Max Accumulated Dose Limit cannot be changed.
- This optional setting applies to all drug setups within Profile PCA Drug Library.

Module Location Enforcement (Max Accumulated Dose Limit)
Tamper resistant security feature that ensures PCA Module is in a tamper evident position. When enabled, PCA Module must be located to direct right of PC Unit to allow programming an infusion.

Near End of Infusion (NEOI)
Allows an alert to be configured to sound anywhere between 5 – 25% volume remaining.

NEOI Alert
Alert Time can be set to occur when 5 – 25% of VTBI remains.

Occlusion Pressure
Downstream occlusion alarm threshold can be set to low, medium, or high.

Operating Modes
Four operating modes are available:
- PCA only
- continuous infusion
- PCA + continuous infusion
- loading dose only

All programming of infusions in each of 4 modes are completed using Drug Library as defined by hospital-established best-practice.
Features and Displays  (Continued)

Features and Definitions  (Continued)

Patient History
The PCA Module records and displays patient history for up to 24 hours, and may be trended to following intervals: 1hr, 2hr, 4hr, 8hr, 12hr, 24hr. Patient history includes the following trending information:

- total demands
- delivered demands
- total drug delivered
- time and date patient history last cleared
- average drug per hour
- total amount of drug delivered via:
  - PCA dose
  - continuous infusion
  - loading dose
  - bolus dose

PCA Dose
Enables a patient to self-administer a bolus infusion to be delivered at programmed lockout intervals through Dose Request Cord. When programmed in PCA+continuous mode, continuous infusion resumes following PCA dose.

PCA Pause Protocol
An optional and hospital-configurable feature intended to align with hospital/health system’s current protocol for patient monitoring during PCA therapy. When enabled, PCA infusion pauses and alarms when defined monitoring values for Alaris® SpO₂ and/or Alaris® EtCO₂ Modules are reached.

Pressure Limit
Downstream occlusion alarm threshold can be set to low, medium or high. Syringe variability may impact occlusion pressure sensing. Variability may reduce device’s time to alarm and/or may require that a higher alarm pressure limit be programmed.

Priming
Allows a limited volume of fluid to be delivered in order to prime administration set prior to being connected to a patient or after changing a syringe. When priming, a single continuous press of PRIME soft key delivers up to 2 mL of priming/fluid.

Restore
To simplify programming, can be used to recall previous PCA programming parameters for same patient. This option is only available if patient is not new and system is powered up within 8 hours of last usage.
### Features and Definitions (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security Access Level</strong></td>
<td>Profile-specific security access level can be configured to provide varying levels of access to device. Security access is accomplished either through use of key or a 4-digit authorization code. For security level information, reference &quot;Programming&quot;, &quot;Infusion Modes&quot;, &quot;Security Access Levels&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security Code</strong></td>
<td>Four-character code assigned to allow access to PC Unit for setting bolus doses and subsequent programming changes. Ability to use profile-specific code is dependent upon configured Security Access Level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syringe Empty</strong></td>
<td>Instrument gives an alert and stops when an empty syringe is detected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syringe Volume Detection</strong></td>
<td>System automatically detects fluid volume in a syringe when it is inserted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Therapies</strong></td>
<td>An optional hospital-defined therapy or clinical indication for delivery of that infusion. Different Limits can be defined for same medication with different therapeutic indications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Time Window (h)</strong></td>
<td>1, 2 or 4 hours.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operating Features, Controls, Indicators

- **Alarm** (red)
- **Infusing** (green)
- **Standby** (yellow)

### Status Indicators
- **IUI Connector, Left**
- **Rate Display**
- **Message Display**
- **Channel (module) Identification**
- **Channel (module) Select Key**: When pressed, selects corresponding module for infusion parameter entry and infusion setup.

### Controls
- **Pause Key**: When pressed during an infusion, temporarily stops infusion on that module. After approximately 2 minutes, a visual and audio prompt begins.
- **Channel (module) Off Key**: When pressed and held until a beep is heard, stops infusion on that module, deselects that module, and if only that module had been operating, system powers down. Repeat for other operating modules to power off each module.

### Alarm Indicators
- **Alarm**: When active, indicates an alarm condition.
- **Infusing**: When active, indicates infusion in progress.
- **Standby**: When active, indicates the system is in standby mode.

### Security Features
- **Security Lock**
- **Gripper Control / Drive Head Release** (shown in closed position)
- **Plunger Grippers** (shown in closed position)
- **Barrel Flange Gripper**
- **Syringe Barrel Sensor**
- **Syringe Barrel Clamp / Sizer**
- **Security Door**
- **Restart Key**: When pressed, resumes operation of a previously paused or alarmed infusion on that module.
- **Module Release Latch**: When pressed, allows module to be removed
- **Dose Request Cord Attachment**

### Dose Request Cord
- **Dose Request Cord Attachment**

### Additional Features
- **Message Display**
- **Channel (module) Identification**
- **Resume Key**: When pressed, resumes operation of a previously paused or alarmed infusion on that module.

---

3-48 General Information

Alaris® System Directions for Use

Patient Controlled Analgesia Module Section
Displays

The displays illustrated throughout this document are for illustration purposes only. The display content will vary, depending on configuration settings, type of administration set in use, hospital-defined data set uploaded using the Guardrails® Suite MX, programmed drug calculation parameters, and many other variables. Refer to specific drug product labeling for information concerning appropriate administration techniques and dosages.

Configurable Settings

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system configurable settings.

If the configuration settings need to be changed from the "Factory Default" settings, reference the applicable Technical Service Manual or contact Cardinal Health Technical Support, for technical, troubleshooting, and preventive maintenance information.

With the Profiles feature enabled, the settings are configured independently for each profile. A hospital-defined, best-practice data set must be uploaded to enable the Profiles feature. Date and Time is a system setting and is the same in all profiles.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorization Code</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>4 digits (0 - 9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolus Delivery Rate</td>
<td>150 mL/hr</td>
<td>75 - 500 mL/hr (limited by syringe size)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolus Dose</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolus Dose include in Max. Limit</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dose Request Cord Configuration</td>
<td>Profile 2</td>
<td>Profile 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loading Dose</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lockout Interval</td>
<td>1 - 99 minutes in 1-minute increments</td>
<td>Min/Max 1 - 99 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Accumulated Dose Range</td>
<td>1-hour limit</td>
<td>Disabled/1, 2 or 4-hour limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Rate (for Continuous Dose)①</td>
<td>999 mL/h</td>
<td>0.1 - 99.9 mL/h in 0.1 mL/h increments; 100 - 999 mL/h in 1 mL/h increments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEOI</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Alert Time</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 - 25% of remaining infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occlusion Pressure Set Point</td>
<td>High (800 mmHg)</td>
<td>Low (200 mmHg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium (500 mmHg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>High (800 mmHg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA Pause Protocol:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• PCA Pause Protocol</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Monitoring Module Attach Enforcement</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• PCA Pause Protocol Text</td>
<td>PCA infusion has paused due to a decline in respiratory status. Check patient.</td>
<td>Editable per hospital protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SpO2 Settings ②</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>♦ % SpO2 Low Limit</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>20 - 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>♦ Initial Value</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>20 - 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• EtCO2 Settings ③</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>♦ Respiratory Rate Lower Limit (bpm)</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>0 - 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>♦ Initial Value</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>0 - 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priming</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forced Module Location</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled - Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Access Level</td>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>Level 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configurable Settings (Continued)

NOTES:
① This configuration setting is a shared setting between the PCA Module and the Alaris® Syringe Module.
② These values are configured in the SpO₂ Module settings within the Guardrails® Editor and can be changed by the clinician by accessing Channel Options on the PCA Module.
③ These values are configured in the EtCO₂ Module settings within the Guardrails® Editor and can be changed by the clinician by accessing Channel Options on the PCA Module.

Specifications and Symbols

Specifications

Bolus Dose Range
Configured according to hospital best-practice guidelines.

Bolus Volume after Occlusion, Maximum:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occlusion Pressure Limit</th>
<th>Bolus Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>0.997 mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>0.396 mL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Critical Volume:
Maximum over-infusion which can occur in event of a single-fault condition will not exceed 2% of nominal syringe fill volume during loading and 1% of maximum syringe travel after syringe loading.

Delivery Units
mcg, mcg/h, mg, mg/h, mL, mL/h

Dimensions:
4.5" W x 15.0" H x 7.5" D (exclusive of security door)

Environmental Conditions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating</th>
<th>Storage/Transport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Range:</td>
<td>41 - 104°F (5 - 40°C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Humidity:</td>
<td>20 - 90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmospheric Pressure:</td>
<td>525 - 4560 mmHg (700 - 6080 hPa)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Equipment Orientation:
To ensure proper operation, PC Unit must remain in an upright position.
### Specifications and Symbols (Continued)

#### Specifications (Continued)

**Flow Rate Programming:** The flow rate range is from 0.1 to 999 mL/h as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flow Rates (mL)</th>
<th>Selectable Increments (mL/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.10 - 9.99</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 - 99.9</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 - 999</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rate Restriction by Syringe Size:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syringe Size (mL)</th>
<th>Flow Rate Range (mL/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50/60</td>
<td>0.1 - 999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30/35</td>
<td>0.1 - 650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.1 - 500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fluid Ingress Protection:** IPX1, Drip Proof

**Loading Dose Range:** Configured according to hospital best-practice guidelines.

**Max Limit Range:** Configured according to hospital best-practice guidelines.

**Occlusion Alarm Thresholds:** Three settings:

- Low
- Medium
- High

**Operating Principle:** Positive displacement

**PCA Dose Range:** Configured according to hospital best-practice guidelines.

**Rate Accuracy:** ±2% of full-scale plunger travel (not including syringe variation)

---

**WARNING**

Syringe size and running force, variations of back pressure, or any combination of these may affect rate accuracy. Factors that can influence back pressure are: administration set configuration, IV solution viscosity, and IV solution temperature. Back pressure may also be affected by type of catheter. Reference “Trumpet and Start-Up Curves” for data on how these factors influence rate accuracy.

**Shock Protection:**

- Type CF, Defibrillator Proof (PCA Module)
- Type BF, Defibrillator Proof (Dose Request Cord)
Specifications and Symbols (Continued)

Specifications (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rate (mL/h)</th>
<th>High</th>
<th>Low</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>120 minutes</td>
<td>37 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
<td>7 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Maximum Time to Alarm specifications are based on Alaris® Medical Systems’ standard operating conditions:

- Atmospheric Pressure: 645 - 795 mmHg
- Back Pressure: 0 mmHg before producing occlusion
- Humidity: 20 - 90%
- Temperature: 68 ±4° F

Weight: 5.5 lbs

Symbols

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system symbols.

- Type CF, defibrillation-proof (PCA Module)
- Type BF, defibrillation-proof (Dose Request Cord)

Manufacturer.

Single-Use

- Single-Use. Do not re-use.

Product contains a particular element; such as, \(\text{DEHP} = \text{DEHP in fluid pathway.}\)

Product DOES NOT contain a particular element; such as, \(\text{LATEX} = \text{administration set is latex-free.}\)

Approximate administration set priming volume.
Specifications and Symbols (Continued)

Symbols (Continued)

Expiration date for product will be identified near hour glass symbol.

Do not use if package is damaged.

Product contains micron filter, where xx represents filter size.

Authorized representative in European Community.
Trumpet and Start-Up Curves

In this instrument, as with all infusion systems, the action of the pumping mechanism and variations in individual syringes and administration sets cause short-term fluctuations in rate accuracy. The following graphs show typical performance of the system, as follows:

1. Accuracy during various time periods over which fluid delivery is measured (trumpet curves).

2. Delay in onset of fluid flow when infusion commences (start-up curves).

Trumpet and start-up curves have been provided for 0.1 mL/h, 1.0 mL/h and 5.0 mL/h. Measurements for trumpet curve rates above 5.0 mL/h are also not provided, as the volume of the syringe will be displaced in a very short time with a rate of up 999 mL/h. Accuracy, however, is assured with the design implementation.

Trumpet curves are named for their characteristic shape. They display discrete accuracy data averaged over particular time periods or "observation windows", not continuous data versus operating time.

Over long observation windows, short-term fluctuations have little effect on accuracy, as represented by the flat part of the curve. As the observation window is reduced, short-term fluctuations have greater effect, as represented by the "mouth" of the trumpet. Knowledge of system accuracy over various observation windows may be of interest when certain drugs are being administered.

Because the clinical impact of short-term fluctuations on rate accuracy depends on the half-life of the drug being infused and on the degree of intravascular integration, the clinical effect cannot be determined from the trumpet curves alone. Knowledge of the start-up characteristics should also be considered.

The start-up curves represent continuous flow rate versus operating time for two hours from the start of the infusion. They exhibit the delay in onset of delivery due to mechanical compliance and provide a visual representation of uniformity. Trumpet curves are derived from the second hour of this data.

Under conditions of -100 mmHg, +100 mmHg, and +300 mmHg pressures, the PCA Module typically exhibits a long-term accuracy offset of approximately 0.2% or less from the mean value.
Trumpet and Start-Up Curves (Continued)

- **Mode Start-up at 0.1 mL/h (initial)**

- **Mode Trumpet Curve at 0.1 mL/h (initial)**

- **Mode Start-up at 1 mL/h (initial)**

- **Mode Trumpet Curve at 1 mL/h (initial)**

- **Mode Start-up at 5 mL/h (initial)**

- **Mode Trumpet Curve at 5 mL/h (initial)**

Legend:
- ■ Maximum rate error
- ● Overall rate error
- ○ Minimum rate error
General

The PCA Module Technical Service Manual is available from Cardinal Health. It includes routine service schedules, interconnect diagrams, component parts lists and descriptions, test procedures, and other technical information, to assist qualified service personnel in repair and maintenance of the instrument's repairable components. Maintenance procedures are intended to be performed only by qualified personnel, using the Service Manual, Maintenance Software and Maintenance Software User Manual.

Artifacts: It is normal for an infusion device to produce nonhazardous currents when infusing electrolytes. These currents vary proportional to the infusion device flow rate. When an ECG monitoring system is not functioning under optimal conditions, these currents may appear as artifacts, simulating actual ECG readings. To determine if ECG abnormalities are caused by patient condition or the ECG equipment, place the infusion device on hold. If the ECG readings become normal, the ECG equipment requires attention. Proper setup of the ECG equipment should eliminate these artifacts. Reference the appropriate ECG monitoring system documentation for instructions on setup and maintenance.

Alarms, Errors, Messages

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for the following system references:

Alarms, Errors, Messages
Audio Characteristics
Definitions
Radio Frequency Note
Alarms, Errors, Messages  (Continued)

Definitions

Alert  A visual message to help reduce programming errors by indicating a Limit (“Soft” or “Hard”) has been exceeded. A response is required before programming can continue.

Clinical Advisory  A visual message when a designated drug is selected, to remind clinician of specific hospital/facility standards of practice when programming an IV medication. A specific Clinical Advisory and/or message can be associated with a selected drug within any of the patient care profiles. Clinical Advisories will not be displayed in Anesthesia mode.

Alarms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attach Dose Request Cord</td>
<td>Dose Request Cord detached from device. Dose Request Cord required for PCA only and PCA + continuous infusion modes.</td>
<td>Reattach Dose Request Cord and press RESTART key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel Disconnected</td>
<td>Module(s) disconnected while in operation or have a communication problem.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and clear message from screen, press CONFIRM soft key. Reattach module, if desired, ensuring it is securely “clicked” into place at Channel Release Latch. If alarm is still present, replace module with an operational instrument.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock Door</td>
<td>Door unlocked during infusion. System will not infuse with door unlocked.</td>
<td>Lock door and press RESTART key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occlusion</td>
<td>Increased back pressure sensed while infusing. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>Clear occlusion. Press RESTART key, or press CHANNEL SELECT key and then START soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA Pause Alarm</td>
<td>PCA infusion has paused due to a decline in respiratory status.</td>
<td>Assess patient status per hospital policy. Press CONFIRM once patient status and monitoring values have been addressed. Press RESTART key per hospital policy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Alarms (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Empty</td>
<td>Syringe is empty.</td>
<td>➤ Set up new infusion or press CHANNEL OFF key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If syringe is not empty, other possibility is:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syringe plunger travel impeded.</td>
<td>➤ Verify syringe plunger movement is unimpeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If syringe is not empty and above actions do not correct alarm, contact qualified service personnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Syringe Adjustment Alarms

When a syringe installation problem is detected, a visual signal is displayed. Text in the display blinks to indicate the location of the problem.

- When problem is corrected, press CONFIRM soft key.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Syringe</td>
<td>Plunger grippers opened during infusion and then closed. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>➤ Securely lock plunger grippers, press CHANNEL SELECT key, and reselect syringe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syringe barrel clamp opened during infusion and then closed. Infusion stops on affected module.</td>
<td>➤ Securely lock syringe barrel clamp and press RESTART key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syringe plunger not captured while in idle state. System alarms after 30 seconds, to indicate potential siphoning condition.</td>
<td>➤ Check for potential siphoning. Ensure administration set clamp (roller/slide) is in closed position. Securely lock plunger grippers over syringe plunger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Not Engaged</td>
<td>Drive system disengaged during operation.</td>
<td>➤ Open and close plunger grippers and syringe barrel clamp. Ensure syringe is properly installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Errors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Channel Error</td>
<td>Error detected. Operation stops on affected module.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and continue operation of unaffected modules, press CONFIRM soft key. Replace module with an operational instrument, as required. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Calibration Required</td>
<td>Error on infusing module indicating calibration is required. Infusion stops on affected module. CALIBRATE scrolls in Message Display.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and continue operation of unaffected modules, press CONFIRM soft key. Replace module with an operational instrument, as required. Service by qualified personnel is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Driver Head Error</td>
<td>Noninfusing module, with plunger grippers open, senses excessive pressure being applied downward on Drive Head. OCCLUSION scrolls in Message Display.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and continue normal operation, press CONFIRM soft key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bolus Complete</td>
<td>Current bolus dose completed. Channel running in continuous dose if programmed.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusion Complete</td>
<td>Current infusion completed.</td>
<td>Set up a new infusion or press CHANNEL OFF key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Complete</td>
<td>Current loading dose completed. Infusion mode menu available or programmed infusion running.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Limit Reached</td>
<td>Programmed maximum limit has been reached over time period specified. Infusion paused until time limit has expired.</td>
<td>To silence alarm, press SILENCE key. To change Max Limit, press CHANNEL SELECT, press SETUP soft key, and unlock door or enter Authorization Code applicable for current Security Access Level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Messages (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEOI (Near End of Infusion)</td>
<td>Syringe almost empty.</td>
<td>None. This is a timed event that can be set. To set or change this option, reference &quot;General Information&quot;, &quot;Configurable Settings&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panel Locked</td>
<td>Tamper Resist feature is active and a key was pressed.</td>
<td>If appropriate, deactivate Tamper Resist feature using Tamper Resist Control on back of PC Unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panel Unlocked</td>
<td>Tamper Resist feature deactivated.</td>
<td>None.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause</td>
<td>Pause control pressed; infusion stopped.</td>
<td>To resume infusion, press RESTART key, or press CHANNEL SELECT key and then START soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA Complete</td>
<td>Current PCA dose complete. Lockout interval begins. Channel running in continuous dose if programmed.</td>
<td>None.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA Not In Secure Location</td>
<td>PCA Module is not in preferable location to allow locking to PC Unit. Device is not in a tamper evident position.</td>
<td>Detach PCA Module from current position and reattach to immediate right of PC Unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringe Not Recognized</td>
<td>Installed syringe of unknown type and size.</td>
<td>Select and confirm correct syringe type and size, and then press CONFIRM; or use a syringe type and size that system can automatically and correctly identify.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:**

① The device will re-alarm if the Dose Request Cord is pressed again while in a Max Limit state.
To ensure the system remains in good operating condition, both regular and preventive maintenance inspections are required. Reference the Maintenance Software and Software User Manual (v8.1 or later) for detailed instructions.

### REGULAR INSPECTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROCEDURE</th>
<th>FREQUENCY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INSPECT FOR DAMAGE:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Surfaces</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keypad</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seal</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical Parts</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEANING</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START-UP</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**

Failure to perform these inspections may result in improper instrument operation.

**CAUTION**

Regular and preventive maintenance inspections should only be performed by qualified service personnel.
Alaris® SpO₂ Modules
8210 and 8220 Series
This Section of the Directions for Use (DFU) provides Alaris® SpO2 Module, 8210 and 8220 Series ("SpO2 Module"), instructions and information. It is used in conjunction with the following:

- Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit ("PC Unit") Section of this DFU
- Nellcor® and Masimo® Cable and Sensor Instructions
- Maintenance Software and User Manual for Alaris® System
- SpO2 Module sensor and cable Compatibility Cards

The SpO2 Modules are indicated for continuous, noninvasive monitoring of functional oxygen saturation of arterial hemoglobin (SpO2) and pulse rate measured by an SpO2 sensor. The SpO2 Modules and accessories are indicated for use with adult, pediatric and neonatal patients during both no motion and motion conditions, and for patients who are well or poorly perfused in hospitals and hospital-type facilities. Only 1 SpO2 Module can be connected to the Alaris® System.

The 8210 Series SpO2 Module uses a Nellcor® DOC-10 patient cable and a wide variety of OxiMax® series sensors. The 8220 Series SpO2 Module uses a wide variety of Masimo® patient cables and Masimo® sensors. For specific directions for use, reference the applicable cable and sensor packaging.

The majority of user interface programming is identical for both SpO2 Modules. If a procedure/information applies to a specific module, the following identifiers will indicate the model it applies to.

8210 Series:  

8220 Series:  

Cables and Sensors: Reference "General Information" for "Cables and Sensors" information.
Alarms and Messages: Reference "Troubleshooting and Maintenance" for module-specific "Alarms and Messages".

Contraindications: The SpO₂ Modules are contraindicated for use as apnea monitors.

Electromagnetic Environment: Reference "Appendix" Section of this DFU ("Regulations and Standards", Compliance").
1. Attach applicable patient cable to SpO₂ Module. Ensure secure connection and patient cable is not twisted, sliced or frayed.

2. Attach applicable sensor to patient cable. Refer to sensor’s directions for use for detailed instructions.

3. Attach sensor to patient. Refer to sensor’s directions for use for detailed instructions.

**WARNING**

8210 Series:
Use only approved OxiMax® sensors, and DOC–10 and OC–3 pulse oximetry cables.

8220 Series:
Use only approved Masimo® sensors and patient cables.

Use of sensors, transducers, cables and accessories other than those specified may cause improper SpO₂ Module performance resulting in inaccurate readings, increased emission and/or decreased immunity, and degraded electromagnetic compatibility performance of the SpO₂ Module. For a list of compatible sensors and cables, reference the Sensor and Cable Compatibility Card (provided separately).
Display references throughout this procedure are for illustration purposes only.

Reference "General Information", "Features and Displays" and the PC Unit Section of this DFU for information on the following:

- Displays
- Operating Features, Controls, Indicators

The majority of user interface programming is identical for both SpO₂ Modules.

**Monitoring Mode**

1. Perform following steps (reference PC Unit Section of this DFU, "General Setup and Operation", "Start-Up"):
   a. Power on system.
   b. Choose Yes or No to New Patient?
   c. Confirm current profile or select a new profile.
   d. Enter patient identifier, if required.

2. Attach patient cable and sensor (reference “Getting Started”).

3. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.

   - **SEARCHING** may appear in Channel Message display until SpO₂ and pulse readings stabilize (approximately 15 seconds).
   - If sensor is not attached to a site, SENSOR OFF displays.
   - To prevent screen from reverting to Main Display, press ENTER key within 30 seconds after SPO2 Main screen displays.
   - If sensor is not attached during message display, module goes into sleep mode. To begin monitoring once module is in this mode, press MONITOR key.

4. Ensure sensor’s red LED is on.
5. To change alarm limits, reference "Setting Alarm Limits" procedure.

OR

To accept settings and begin monitoring, press ENTER key.

Setting Alarm Limits

1. Press LIMITS soft key.
Monitoring Mode (Continued)

Setting Alarm Limits (Continued)

2. To change a limit setting, press soft key next to applicable parameter.

3. Enter a numeric value for selected alarm limit.
   - %SPO2 HIGH limit can be Off or a numeric value.

4. To move to next limit, press ENTER key.

5. To confirm alarm settings and return to SPO2 Main display, press CONFIRM soft key.

6. To return to Main Display, press MAIN SCREEN soft key.

Navigating Trend Data

1. To view Trend Data, press TREND soft key.

2. To navigate from page to page, press PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN soft keys.
3. To scroll data 1 row at a time, press ▼ or ▲ key.

4. To change TIME increments for data review, move cursor to desired time period and press ZOOM soft key.
   - New time increments display.
   - Each press of ZOOM soft key changes time increments.

5. To return to SPO2 Main display, press SPO2 MAIN soft key.

6. To return to Main Display, press MAIN SCREEN soft key.

NOTES:
① Tabular information is not updated while the Trend Data view is displayed. The tabular data is updated, using the new trend data stored in the SpO2 Module, after leaving the Trend Data view. To view the latest data, return to the Trend Data view.
② ⚠ displays if an alarm limit is reached.
③ If no SPO2 or PULSE rate values are available for the time period displayed, dashes (---) are displayed.
Navigating PCA / SpO2 Trend Data

To access and view shared trend data when an Alaris® PCA Module is present, perform the following steps:

1. To access option to view trend data, press OPTIONS key while in SPO2 Main display.

2. To view Trend Data, press PCA/SpO2 Trend data soft key.

3. For instructions on how to perform following, reference “Navigating Trend Data” procedure.
   - Navigate from page to page.
   - Change TIME increments.
   - Return to SPO2 Main display.
   - Return to Main Display.

NOTES:

① Tabular information is not updated while the Trend Data view is displayed. The tabular data is updated, using the new trend data stored in the SpO2 Module, after leaving the Trend Data view. To view the latest data, return to the Trend Data view.

② Δ displays if an alarm limit is reached.

③ If no SPO2 or PULSE rate values are available for the time period displayed, dashes (---) are displayed.
Monitoring Mode (Continued)

Presilencing Alarm

1. To presilence alarm, press SILENCE key.
   - All monitoring alarms are silenced for 120 seconds. Infusion alarms are not silenced.

2. To cancel presilence alarm and return to alarmable mode:
   - Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
   - Press CANCEL SILENCE soft key.

Channel Options

Changing Limit Mode

The following procedure can be performed only when the Guardrails® Suite MX is not enabled (profile option not being used for programming).

1. Press Limit Mode soft key.
Channel Options (Continued)

Changing Limit Mode (Continued)

2. To change Limit Mode Setup, press applicable soft key.

   OR

   To leave Limit Mode Setup unchanged and return to SPO2 Main display, press EXIT soft key.

Changing Pulse Beep Volume

1. Press Pulse Beep Volume soft key.

2. To test or change:
   a. To test volume level (when not attached to patient), press Test soft key.
   b. To increase volume, press Louder soft key until desired volume level is attained (1, 2 or 3).
   c. To decrease volume, press Softer soft key until desired volume level is attained.
   d. To turn off pulse beep, press Off soft key.

3. To return to SPO2 Main display, press CONFIRM soft key.

NOTE:
① The pulse beep must be on to test the volume level. To turn pulse beep on, press the Louder soft key and adjust as needed (steps 2b and 2c).
**Changing SatSeconds Limit**

1. Press **SatSeconds Limits** soft key.

2. To change **SatSeconds**, press applicable soft key. Selectable **Increase** and **Decrease** options are 10, 25, 50 and 100 seconds.

3. To return **SPO2 Main** display, press **CONFIRM** soft key.

**Changing Saturation Averaging Time**

1. Press **Saturation Averaging Time** soft key.
2. To change **Saturation Averaging Time**, press applicable soft key. Selectable options are 2, 4, 8, 10, 12, 14 and 16 seconds.
   - **FAST SAT** is enabled when 2 or 4 seconds is selected.
3. To return **SPO2 Main** display, press CONFIRM soft key.

**Changing Sensitivity Mode**

1. Press **Sensitivity Mode** soft key.

2. To change **Sensitivity Mode**, press applicable soft key.
   - **Normal**: Normal patient monitoring.
   - **Maximum**: Improved low perfusion performance.

**NOTE:**

① The sensitivity mode displays on the **SPO2 Main** display only when **Maximum** is selected.
Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU, “General Setup and Operation”, for various “system” start-up and setup procedures.
• The SpO₂ Module is **not to be used as an apnea monitor**.

• **Pulse oximetry readings and pulse signal** can be affected by certain ambient conditions, sensor application errors and certain patient conditions.

• The SpO₂ Module is intended only as an **adjunct in patient assessment**. It must be used in conjunction with clinical signs and symptoms.

• The SpO₂ Module should be considered an **early warning device**. As a trend towards patient deoxygenation is indicated, blood samples should be analyzed by a laboratory CO-Oximeter to completely understand the patient’s condition.

• **Interfering Substances**: Carboxyhemoglobin and methemoglobin may erroneously increase readings. The level of increase is approximately equal to the amount of carboxyhemoglobin present. Dyes, or any substance containing dyes, that change usual arterial pigmentation may cause erroneous readings.

• The SpO₂ Module is **not rated for defibrillation use**. Disconnect the sensor from the patient or patient cable from the module prior to defibrillation.

• **Do not lift** the SpO₂ Module by the cable because it may disconnect from the instrument, causing it to drop on the patient. Do not place the SpO₂ Module in any position that may cause it to fall onto the patient.

• **Respond immediately to system alarms**; patient monitoring may cease under certain alarm conditions.
• Inspect the SpO₂ sensor site regularly to ensure correct sensor positioning, application and site integrity. Tissue damage could occur over prolonged time periods, depending on the patient profile (such as, neonates) and method of application. Refer to the sensor instructions for additional information.

• Do not use a sensor, cable or connector that appears damaged. Do not use a sensor with exposed optical components.

• The sensor disconnect error message and associated alarm indicate the sensor is either disconnected or the wiring is faulty. Check the sensor connection and, if necessary, replace the sensor.

• 8210 Series: Use only approved OxiMax® sensors, and DOC–10 and OC–3 pulse oximetry cables.

8220 Series: Use only approved Masimo® sensors and patient cables.

Use of sensors, transducers, cables and accessories other than those specified may cause improper SpO₂ Module performance resulting in inaccurate readings, increased emission and/or decreased immunity, and degraded electromagnetic compatibility performance of the SpO₂ Module. For a list of compatible sensors and cables, reference the Sensor and Cable Compatibility Card (provided separately).

• Carefully route patient cabling to reduce the possibility of patient entanglement or strangulation.

• Before use, read the sensor directions for use, including all warnings, cautions and instructions.

CAUTION

• Do not immerse or dampen the sensor or cable. Clean per manufacturer’s instructions.
Cables and Sensors

Nellcor® Patient Cables and OxiMax® Sensors

The Nellcor® DOC-10 and OC-3 patient cables interface the SpO₂ Module with the patient sensors.

When selecting a sensor, consider the patient's weight, the adequacy of perfusion, the available sensor sites and the duration of monitoring. Use only OxiMax® sensors. Select an appropriate sensor, apply it as directed, and observe all warnings and cautions presented in the directions for use accompanying the sensor.

For a list of compatible sensors and cables, reference the Sensor and Cable Compatibility Card (provided separately).

Masimo® Patient Cables and Sensors

Reusable patient cables of various lengths are available. All cables that display the Masimo® SET® logo are designed to work with an SpO₂ Module displaying the Masimo® SET® logo.

When selecting a sensor, consider the patient's weight, the adequacy of perfusion, the available sensor sites and the duration of monitoring. Use only Masimo® SET® sensors. Select an appropriate sensor, apply it as directed, and observe all warnings and cautions presented in the directions for use accompanying the sensor.

For a list of compatible sensors and cables, reference the Sensor and Cable Compatibility Card (provided separately).
### Features and Displays

#### Features and Definitions

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system features and definitions.

---

#### 8210 and 8220 Series

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>% SpO₂ Alarm Limits</td>
<td>Upper and lower saturation limits for %SpO₂ alarm may be adjusted by clinician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% SpO₂ Display</td>
<td>Functional arterial hemoglobin oxygen saturation is displayed in units of percentage SpO₂.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit Mode</td>
<td>Configurable mode that can be set to display either adult or neonatal monitoring mode. (Reference &quot;Configurable Settings&quot; for additional configurable features.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleth Waveform</td>
<td>Plethysmographic (pleth) waveform is a graphic representation of changes in extremity blood volume during events of cardiac cycle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Beat Volume</td>
<td>Sound of each pulse beep may be configured to be off or to a volume level of 1, 2 or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Rate</td>
<td>Displayed in beats per minute (bpm).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Rate Alarm Limits</td>
<td>Upper and lower pulse rate alarm limits may be adjusted by clinician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trend Data</td>
<td>Tabular display of %SpO₂ and pulse rate. Display shows average high and low values, and alarm conditions for time period displayed. Up to 24 hours of data is stored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SatSeconds limits controls time %SpO\textsubscript{2} level may fall outside alarm limits before an audible alarm sounds. Method of calculation is as follows:

- Number of percentage points %SpO\textsubscript{2} falls outside of alarm limit is multiplied by number of seconds %SpO\textsubscript{2} level remains outside that limit.
- Points $\times$ Seconds = SatSeconds
- Points = %SpO\textsubscript{2} percentage points outside of limit
- Seconds = number of seconds %SpO\textsubscript{2} remains at that point outside of limit

Saturation levels may fluctuate rather than remain steady for a period of several seconds. Often, %SpO\textsubscript{2} levels may fluctuate above and below alarm limit, reentering nonalarm range several times. During such fluctuations, SpO\textsubscript{2} Module integrates number of %SpO\textsubscript{2} points, both positive and negative, until either SatSeconds limit (SatSeconds time setting) is reached or %SpO\textsubscript{2} level returns to within a normal range and remains there.

SatSeconds “Safety Net” is for patients with saturation levels having frequent excursions below limit but not staying below limit long enough for SatSeconds time setting to be reached. When 3 or more limit violations occur within 60 seconds, an alarm sounds, even if SatSeconds time setting has not been reached.

**SatSeconds Alarm Management Technology**

With SatSeconds Alarm Management Technology, upper and lower alarm limits are set in the same way as with traditional alarm management. A SatSeconds limit can be set to allow monitoring of %SpO\textsubscript{2} below selected low alarm limit for a period of time before an audible alarm sounds.
Fast SAT

When Fast SAT is enabled and there is 1 data point that is significantly different from a previous data point, averaging is disregarded and most recent data point is displayed. For example, if readings were 97%, 96%, 95% and 85%, displayed saturation level would be 85%.

PI

Perfusion Index (PI) is a scaled numeric value derived from magnitude of pulsations displayed on plethysmographic (pleth) waveform. It is calculated as a percentage of pulsatile signal to nonpulsatile signal. PI is used to find best perfused site for sensor placement (larger the PI, stronger the perfusion). Operating range is 0.02 to 20. Desired number is greater than 1 or as large as possible.

Saturation Averaging Time

Averaging time can be set to 2, 4, 8, 10, 12, 14 or 16 seconds.

Sensitivity Mode

Sensitivity mode, normal or maximum, of current monitoring configuration is displayed in options mode. Normal setting is used for normal patient monitoring purposes. Maximum setting is used for improved low perfusion performance.

SET® Technology

Signal Extraction Technology® (SET®) uses adaptive filters to separate arterial signal from nonarterial noise. SET® provides for accurate readings under extreme conditions; such as, low perfusion and motion.

Signal I.Q.™ Feature

Features and Displays (Continued)

Operating Features, Controls, Indicators

Status Indicators

- Alarm (red)
- Infusing (green)
- Standby (yellow)

Module Release Latch:
When pressed, allows module to be removed.

%SpO2 Display

Pulse Rate Display

Channel (module) Identification

Channel (module) Select Key:
When pressed, selects corresponding module for patient monitoring and setup.

Monitor Key:
When pressed, begins patient monitoring.

Channel (module) Off Key:
When pressed and held until a beep is heard, stops operation of that module, deselects that module, and if only that module had been operating, system powers down. Repeat for other operating modules to power off each module.

IUI Connector, Left
(not visible)

IUI Connector, Right

Pulse Bar Display

Patient Cable Connector

Channel (module) Message Display

Patient Cable Connector
The displays illustrated throughout this document are for illustration purposes only. The display content will vary, depending on configuration settings, hospital-defined data set uploaded using the Guardrails® Suite MX, programmed parameters, and many other variables.

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU.

**Main Display**

**SPO2 Main Display**

![Nellcor](image1)

![Masimo SET](image2)
Configurable Settings

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system configurable settings.

If the configuration settings need to be changed from the "Factory Default" settings, reference the applicable Technical Service Manual or contact Cardinal Health Technical Support, for technical, troubleshooting, and preventive maintenance information.

With the Profiles feature enabled, the settings are configured independently for each profile. A hospital-defined, best-practice data set must be uploaded to enable the Profiles feature. Date and Time is a system setting and is the same in all profiles.

### 8210 and 8220 Series

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Limit Mode</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>Adult, Neonatal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Beep Volume</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Rate Alarm Limit, High</td>
<td>Adult Mode: 120 bpm</td>
<td>31 - 240 bpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal Mode: 200 bpm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Rate Alarm Limit, Low</td>
<td>Adult Mode: 50 bpm</td>
<td>30 - 239 bpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal Mode: 100 bpm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpO₂ Alarm Limit, High</td>
<td>Adult: Off</td>
<td>21 - 100%, Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal: 95%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpO₂ Alarm Limit, Low</td>
<td>Adult: 90%</td>
<td>20 - 99%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal: 80%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8210 Series

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SatSeconds</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>10, 25, 50, 100 seconds; Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configurable Settings (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saturation Averaging Time</td>
<td>8 seconds</td>
<td>2, 4, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(display update period)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitivity Mode</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Normal, Maximum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Specifications and Symbols

#### Specifications

**8210 and 8220 Series**

- **Alarms:** Audible and visual alarms for high and low saturation and pulse rate, sensor condition, system failure and low battery conditions.

- **Alarm Limits:**
  - **Pulse Rate:**
    - Low: 30 - 239 bpm
    - High: 31 - 240 bpm
  - **SpO₂:**
    - Low: 20 - 99%
    - High: 21 - 100%

- **Dimensions:**
  - 3.3"W x 8.9"H x 5.5"D
  - (8.4cm W x 22.6cm H x 14cm D)

- **Electrical Classification:** Class 1, internally powered equipment, Type BF

- **Environmental Conditions:**
  - **Operating**
    - Temperature Range: 41 - 104°F (5 - 40°C)
    - Relative Humidity: 20 - 90% noncondensing
    - Atmospheric Pressure: 525 - 4560 mmHg (700 - 6080 hPa)
  - **Storage/Transport**
    - Temperature Range: -4 - 140°F (-20 - 60°C)
    - Relative Humidity: 5 - 85% noncondensing
    - Atmospheric Pressure: 375 - 760 mmHg (500 - 1013 hPa)

- **Fluid Ingress Protection:** IPX1, Drip Proof

- **Mode of Operation:** Continuous

- **Weight:** 2 lbs (0.91 kg)


**Specifications and Symbols (Continued)**

### 8210 Series

#### Accuracy and Motion Tolerance:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Low Perfusion</strong></th>
<th><strong>Motion</strong></th>
<th><strong>No Motion</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulse Rate:</strong></td>
<td>20 - 250 bpm</td>
<td>normal physiologic range</td>
<td>20 - 250 bpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>±3 digits</td>
<td>(55 - 125 bpm) ±5 digits</td>
<td>±3 digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Functional Saturation:</strong></td>
<td>70 - 100%</td>
<td>70 - 100%</td>
<td>70 - 100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>±2 digits</td>
<td>Adults, Neonates</td>
<td>Adults, ±2 digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>±3 digits</td>
<td>Neonates, ±3 digits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Display Update Period:** 2.25 seconds

**Measurement Range:**

- **Perfusion:** 0.03 - 20%
- **Pulse Rate:** 20 - 250 bpm
- **SpO₂:** 1 - 100%

**Pulse Amplitude Display:** Visual indicators for pulse signals represent proportional pulse amplitude strength.

**Sensor:**

Emitted light wavelength range is within 500 - 1000 nm. Output power does not exceed 15 mw.

### 8220 Series

#### Accuracy and Motion Tolerance:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Low Perfusion</strong></th>
<th><strong>Motion</strong></th>
<th><strong>No Motion</strong></th>
<th>Resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulse Rate:</strong></td>
<td>25 - 240 bpm</td>
<td>25 - 240 bpm</td>
<td>25 - 240 bpm</td>
<td>1 bpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>±3 digits</td>
<td>±5 digits</td>
<td>±3 digits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adults, Pediatrics, Neonates</td>
<td>Adults, Pediatrics, Neonates</td>
<td>Adults, Pediatrics, Neonates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Saturation:</strong></td>
<td>70 - 100%</td>
<td>70 - 100%</td>
<td>70 - 100%</td>
<td>1% SpO₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adults, Pediatrics:</td>
<td>±2 digits;</td>
<td>Adults, Pediatrics:</td>
<td>±2 digits;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonates: ±3 digits</td>
<td>Neonates: ±3 digits</td>
<td>Neonates: ±3 digits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Display Update Period:** Approximately 1 second.
Specifications and Symbols (Continued)

8220 Series (Continued)

**Measurement Range:**

- **Perfusion:** 0.02 - 20%
- **Pulse Rate:** 25 - 240 bpm
- **SpO₂:** 1 - 100%

**Pulse Amplitude Display:** Proportional to height of I/Q signal.

**Sensor:** Emitted light wavelength range is within 500 - 1000 nm. Output power does not exceed 1 mw.

**NOTES:**

1. Specification applies to Nellcor® Board performance and was validated with BIO-TEK and Nellcor® Simulators.
3. Adult specifications are shown for OxiMax® MAX-A and MAX-N sensors with SpO₂ Module. Neonate specifications are shown for OxiMax® MAX-N sensors with SpO₂ Module. Saturation accuracy will vary by sensor type.
4. Masimo® Board performance has been validated for low perfusion accuracy in bench-top testing against a BIO-TEK simulator and a Masimo® simulator.
5. Masimo® Board performance has been validated for motion accuracy in human blood studies on healthy adult volunteers in induced hypoxia studies, while performing rubbing and tapping motions at 2 - 4 Hz at an amplitude of 1 - 2 cm and a nonrepetitive range of 70 - 100% SpO₂ against a laboratory co-oximeter and ECG monitor. This variation equals plus or minus one standard deviation. Plus or minus one standard deviation encompasses 68% of the population.
6. Masimo® Board performance with Masimo® LNOP® Neo and Neo Pt sensors has been validated for neonatal motion accuracy in human blood studies on neonates, while moving the neonate’s foot at 2 - 4 Hz at an amplitude of 1 - 2 cm against a laboratory co-oximeter and ECG monitor. This variation equals plus or minus one standard deviation. Plus or minus one standard deviation encompasses 68% of the population.
7. Masimo® Board performance has been validated for no-motion accuracy in human blood studies on healthy adult volunteers in induced hypoxia studies, in the range of 70 - 100% SpO₂ against a laboratory co-oximeter and ECG monitor. This variation equals plus or minus one standard deviation. Plus or minus one standard deviation encompasses 68% of the population.
**Specifications and Symbols**  (Continued)

**Symbols**

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system symbols.

- Silenced alarm.
- Type BF equipment.

**Measurement Accuracy**

If the accuracy of any measurement does not seem reasonable, first check the patient’s vital signs by alternate means and then check the SpO₂ Module to ensure it is functioning properly.

An inaccurate measurement may be caused by:

- Incorrect sensor application or use.
- Significant levels of dysfunctional hemoglobins; such as, carboxyhemoglobin or methemoglobin.
- Intravascular dyes; such as, indocyanine green or methylene blue.
- Exposure to excessive illumination; such as, a surgical lamp (especially one with a xenon light source), bilirubin lamp, fluorescent light, infrared heating lamp or direct sunlight.
- Prolonged and/or excessive patient movement.
- Venous pulsations.
- Sensor placed on an extremity with a blood pressure cuff, arterial catheter, intravascular line or other causes of insufficient perfusion.
- Nail aberrations, nail polish, fungus, etc. Remove nail polish and/or move sensor to an unaffected site.
- Placement is too close to electrosurgery equipment.
- Defibrillation.
Measurement Accuracy  (Continued)

The loss of a pulse signal can occur in any of the following situations:

- Sensor is too tight.
- Exposure to excessive illumination; such as, a surgical lamp (especially one with a xenon light source), bilirubin lamp, fluorescent light, infrared heating lamp or direct sunlight.
- Sensor placed on an extremity with a blood pressure cuff, arterial catheter, intravascular line or other causes of insufficient perfusion.
- Patient has hypotension, severe vasoconstriction, severe anemia or hypothermia, is in cardiac arrest or is in shock.
- There is an arterial occlusion proximal to sensor.
- Placement is too close to electrosurgery equipment.

NOTE:

① Exposure to excessive illumination can be corrected by covering the sensor with a dark or opaque material.

Principle of Operation

The operation of the SpO₂ Module (8210 Series) is based on the principles of pulse oximetry. Oxyhemoglobin and deoxyhemoglobin differ in their absorption of red and infrared light (spectrophotometry). The volume of arterial blood in tissue and the light absorbed by the blood changes during the pulse (plethysmography). A pulse oximeter determines SpO₂ by passing red and infrared light into an arteriolar bed and measuring changes in light absorption during the pulsatile cycle. Red and infrared low-voltage light-emitting diodes (LED) in the oximetry sensor serve as light sources; a photo diode serves as the photo detector.

Because oxyhemoglobin and deoxyhemoglobin differ in light absorption, the amount of red and infrared light absorbed by
blood is related to hemoglobin oxygen saturation to identify the oxygen saturation of arterial hemoglobin, the monitor uses the pulsatile nature of arterial flow. During systole, a new pulse of arterial blood enters the vascular bed, and blood volume and light absorption increase. During diastole, blood volume and light absorption reach their lowest point. The SpO₂ Module bases its SpO₂ measurements on the difference between maximum and minimum absorption (measurements at systole and diastole). By doing so, it focuses on light absorption by pulsatile arterial blood, eliminating the effects of nonpulsatile absorbers; such as, venous blood, tissue and bone.

Because light absorption by hemoglobin is wavelength dependent and the mean wavelength of LEDs varies, an oximeter must know the mean wavelength of the sensor’s red LED to accurately measure SpO₂. During monitoring, the instrument’s software selects coefficients that are appropriate for the wavelength of that individual sensor’s red LED. Those coefficients are then used to determine SpO₂.

To compensate for differences in tissue thickness, the light intensity of the sensor’s LEDs is adjusted automatically.

The SpO₂ Module measures functional saturation (oxygenated hemoglobin expressed as a percentage of the hemoglobin that can transport oxygen). It does not detect significant amounts of dysfunctional hemoglobin; such as, carboxyhemoglobin or methemoglobin. In contrast, hemoximeters (such as, IL482) report fractional saturation (oxygenated hemoglobin expressed as a percentage of all measured hemoglobin, including measured dysfunctional hemoglobin).

To compare functional saturation measurements to those from an instrument that measures fractional saturation, fractional measurements must be converted as follows:

\[
\text{functional saturation} = \frac{\text{fractional saturation}}{100 - (\%\text{carboxyhemoglobin} + \%\text{methemoglobin})} \times 100
\]
When saturation is calculated from a blood gas partial pressure of oxygen (PO₂), the calculated value may differ from the SpO₂ measurement of the SpO₂ Module, this usually occurs because the calculated saturation was not appropriately corrected for the effects of variables that shift the relationship between PO₂ and pH, temperature, the partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PCO₂), 2,3-DPG, and fetal hemoglobin. To compare functional saturation measurements to those from an instrument that measures fractional saturation, fractional measurements must be converted as follows:

**Oxyhemoglobin Dissociation Curve**

![Diagram of Oxyhemoglobin Dissociation Curve]

- **pH**
- **Temperature**
- **PCO₂**
- **2,3-DPG**
- **Fetal Hb**

- **↑ pH**
- **↓ Temperature**
- **↓ PCO₂**
- **↓ 2,3-DPG**
- **↑ Fetal Hb**
The operation of the SpO₂ Module (8220 Series) is based on the principles of pulse oximetry. Oxyhemoglobin and deoxyhemoglobin differ in their absorption of red and infrared light (spectrophotometry). The volume of arterial blood in tissue and the light absorbed by the blood changes during the pulse (plethysmography).

Because oxyhemoglobin and deoxyhemoglobin differ in light absorption, the amount of red and infrared light absorbed by blood is related to hemoglobin oxygen saturation.

The SpO₂ Module uses the Masimo® Signal Extraction Technology® (SET®) to decompose the red and infrared pulsatile absorbance signal into an arterial signal plus a noise component. Its value is used to find the SpO₂ saturation in an empirically derived equation in the Masimo® SET® software. The values in the look-up table are based on human blood studies against a laboratory co-oximeter on healthy adult volunteers in induced hypoxia states during motion and nonmotion conditions.
The SpO₂ Module Technical Service Manual is available from Cardinal Health. It includes routine service schedules, interconnect diagrams, component parts lists and descriptions, test procedures, and other technical information, to assist qualified service personnel in repair and maintenance of the instrument’s repairable components. Maintenance procedures are intended to be performed only by qualified personnel, using the Service Manual, Maintenance Software and Software User Manual.

**Alarms and Messages**

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for the following system references:

- Alarms, Errors, Messages
- Audio Characteristics
- Definitions
- Radio Frequency Note

### Alarms

**8210 and 8220 Series**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bad Sensor</td>
<td>Broken, unknown or nonsystem sensor or patient cable attached.</td>
<td>Check sensor and patient cable. Confirm correct sensor and patient cable are chosen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Electrical or Optical Interference</td>
<td>External interference on sensor.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Identify source of external interference if other than sensor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Pulse Rate Alarm</td>
<td>High pulse rate alarm limit has been exceeded.</td>
<td>Assess patient's condition. Confirm correct alarm limit values are selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High SpO₂ Alarm</td>
<td>High SpO₂ alarm limit has been exceeded.</td>
<td>Assess patient's condition. Confirm correct alarm limit values are selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 8210 and 8220 Series (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low Pulse Rate Alarm</td>
<td>Low pulse rate alarm limit has been exceeded.</td>
<td>Assess patient's condition. Confirm correct alarm limit values are selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low SpO₂ Alarm</td>
<td>Low SpO₂ alarm limit has been exceeded.</td>
<td>Assess patient's condition. Confirm correct alarm limit values are selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Sensor</td>
<td>Sensor not properly attached to patient cable or patient cable not properly attached to SpO₂ Module.</td>
<td>Attach sensor to patient cable or attach patient cable to SpO₂ Module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Signal</td>
<td>Failure to find a patient signal after 30 seconds of searching.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Confirm correct sensor placement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove Module (Max=1)</td>
<td>More than 1 SpO₂ Module attached.</td>
<td>Remove additional SpO₂ Module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensor Off</td>
<td>Sensor not properly attached to patient.</td>
<td>Reattach sensor to patient.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8210 Series

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - High Pulse Amplitude</td>
<td>Artifact interfering with pulse reading.</td>
<td>Check sensor - relocate sensor to a site with less artifact interference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Excessive Ambient Light</td>
<td>Light interference on sensor.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Remove or reduce lighting. Cover or reposition sensor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Motion Interference</td>
<td>Patient's motion has inhibited monitoring.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Move sensor to a site with less motion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - No signal</td>
<td>Sensor not properly attached to patient cable or patient cable not properly attached to SpO₂ Module.</td>
<td>Attach sensor to patient cable or attach patient cable to SpO₂ Module.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Alarms (Continued)

#### 8210 Series (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Weak Pulse</td>
<td>Patient’s low perfusion has inhibited monitoring.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Move sensor to a better perfused site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Weak Signal</td>
<td>Low quality of signal being measured.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Confirm correct sensor placement. Move sensor to a better perfused site.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 8220 Series

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Light</td>
<td>Light interference on sensor.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Remove or reduce lighting. Cover or reposition sensor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Low Perfusion</td>
<td>Patient’s low perfusion has inhibited monitoring.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Move sensor to a better perfused site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Low Signal I.Q.</td>
<td>Low signal quality being measured.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Confirm correct sensor placement. Move sensor to a better perfused site.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Messages

#### 8210 Series

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Electrical or Optical Interference</td>
<td>External interference on sensor.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Identify source of external interference if other than sensor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - High Pulse Amplitude</td>
<td>Artifact interfering with pulse reading.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Relocate sensor to a site with less artifact interference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Excessive Ambient Light</td>
<td>Light interference on sensor.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Remove or reduce lighting. Cover or reposition sensor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To ensure the system remains in good operating condition, both regular and preventive maintenance inspections are required. Reference the Maintenance Software and Software User Manual (v8.1 or later) for detailed instructions.

### 8210 Series (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Motion</td>
<td>Patient’s motion has inhibited monitoring.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Move sensor to a site with less motion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interference</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Weak Pulse</td>
<td>Patient’s low perfusion has inhibited monitoring.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Move sensor to a better perfused site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Weak Signal</td>
<td>Low quality of signal being measured.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Confirm correct sensor placement. Move sensor to a better perfused site.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8220 Series

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Low Perfusion</td>
<td>Patient’s low perfusion has inhibited monitoring.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Move sensor to a better perfused site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Sensor - Low Signal I.Q.</td>
<td>Low signal quality being measured.</td>
<td>Check sensor. Confirm correct sensor placement. Move sensor to a better perfused site.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Inspection Requirements

To ensure the system remains in good operating condition, both regular and preventive maintenance inspections are required. Reference the Maintenance Software and Software User Manual (v8.1 or later) for detailed instructions.

**REGULAR INSPECTIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROCEDURE</th>
<th>FREQUENCY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INSPECT FOR DAMAGE:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUI Connector</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keypad</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEANING</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START-UP</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**

Failure to perform these inspections may result in improper instrument operation.

**CAUTION**

Regular and preventive maintenance inspections should only be performed by qualified service personnel.
# Table of Contents

**GETTING STARTED**
- **INTRODUCTION** .................................................. 5-1
- **CONNECTING MICROSTREAM® DISPOSABLE** .................. 5-2
- **ATTACHING GAS SCAVENGING SYSTEM** ......................... 5-3

**PROGRAMMING**
- **MONITORING MODE** ............................................... 5-5
  - Setting Alarm Limits ............................................... 5-6
  - Navigating Trend Data .............................................. 5-7
  - Navigating PCA/EtCO₂ Trend Data ................................. 5-8
  - Presilencing Alarm .................................................. 5-9
- **CHANNEL OPTIONS** .................................................. 5-9
  - Changing Limit Mode ............................................... 5-9
  - Changing Waveform Height ....................................... 5-10
  - Changing Waveform Time Scale ................................ 5-11

**GENERAL SETUP AND OPERATION**
- **SYSTEM START-UP / SETUP** ..................................... 5-13

**GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS** ..................................... 5-15
  - General .............................................................. 5-15
  - Microstream® Disposable .......................................... 5-16
- **MICROSTREAM® DISPOSABLE** ..................................... 5-16
  - FEATURES AND DISPLAYS .......................................... 5-17
    - Features and Definitions ....................................... 5-17
    - Operating Features, Controls, Indicators ................... 5-18
    - Displays .......................................................... 5-19
  - **CONFIGURABLE SETTINGS** ....................................... 5-19
  - **SPECIFICATIONS AND SYMBOLS** ................................ 5-20
    - Specifications ................................................... 5-20
    - Symbols ............................................................ 5-22
  - **MEASUREMENT ACCURACY** ....................................... 5-22
  - **WAVEFORM ANALYSIS** ........................................... 5-23
  - **PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION** ...................................... 5-24

**TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE**
- **GENERAL** .......................................................... 5-27
  - **ALARMS AND MESSAGES** ....................................... 5-27
    - Definitions ......................................................... 5-27
    - Audio Characteristics .......................................... 5-28
    - Alarms .............................................................. 5-28
    - Messages ............................................................ 5-29
  - **INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS** .................................... 5-30
Getting Started

Introduction

This Section of the Directions for Use (DFU) provides Alaris® EtCO₂ Module, 8300 Series ("EtCO₂ Module"), instructions and information. It is used in conjunction with the following:

- Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit ("PC Unit") Section of this DFU
- Maintenance Software and User Manual for Alaris® System
- EtCO₂ Module Technical Service Manual
- Microstream® Disposable Compatibility Card
- Oridion’s Microstream® Disposable Instructions

The EtCO₂ Module is a capnograph indicated for continuous, noninvasive monitoring of end tidal carbon dioxide (EtCO₂), fractional inspired carbon dioxide (FI.CO₂) and respiratory rate (RR). The EtCO₂ Module and disposables are indicated for use with intubated and nonintubated adult, geriatric, pediatric and neonatal patients. It is not intended for direct connection to ventilator or breathing systems. Only 1 EtCO₂ Module can be connected to the Alaris® System.

The EtCO₂ Module is used with Oridion’s patented Microstream® Disposables/circuits for sidestream capnography.

**Microstream® Disposable:** Reference "General Information" for "Microstream® Disposable” Information.

**Alarms and Messages:** Reference "Troubleshooting and Maintenance" for module-specific alarms and messages.

**Contraindications:** None known.

**Electromagnetic Environment:** Reference "Appendix" Section of this DFU ("Regulations and Standards", Compliance").
1. Open gas inlet/outlet door by turning door counterclockwise until gas inlet is clearly visible. Hold in open position.

2. Connect Microstream® Disposable:
   a. Press brightly colored end of disposable into gas inlet.
   b. Turn it clockwise until tightly secured to EtCO₂ Module.

**WARNING**

*Use only Microstream® Disposables.* Use of a disposable other than those specified may cause improper EtCO₂ Module performance, resulting in inaccurate readings. For a list of compatible disposables, reference the Microstream® Disposable Compatibility Card (provided separately).
Connecting Microstream® Disposable  (Continued)

3. Release door.

4. Connect Microstream® Disposable to patient. Connection site and manner are dependent on patient intubation status and type of Microstream® Disposable being used (reference disposable’s directions for use).

**NOTE:**

1. The gas inlet is located on the lower left corner of the instrument and is marked with a gas inlet symbol (\(\rightarrow\)).

Attaching Gas Scavenging System

In the presence of high oxygen or anesthesia concentrations, it may be necessary to connect a gas scavenging system to the EtCO₂ Module.

1. Open gas inlet/outlet door by turning door counterclockwise until gas outlet is clearly visible. Hold in open position.  
2. Secure gas scavenger system tubing to EtCO₂ Module by firmly pushing tubing into fitting on gas outlet.

3. Release door.

**NOTE:**

1. The gas outlet is located on the lower right corner of the instrument and is marked with a gas outlet symbol (\(\rightarrow\)).
Display references throughout this procedure are for illustration purposes only.

Reference "General Information", "Features and Displays" and PC Unit Section of this DFU for information on the following:

- Displays
- Operating Features, Controls, Indicators

## Monitoring Mode

1. Perform following steps (reference PC Unit Section of this DFU, "General Setup and Operation", "Start-Up"):
   a. Power on system.
   b. Choose Yes or No to New Patient?
   c. Confirm current profile or select a new profile.
   d. Enter patient identifier, if required.

2. Connect Microstream® Disposable (reference "Getting Started").

3. Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
   - SENSOR WARMING and then SEARCHING appear in Channel Message display until EtCO₂ and respiratory rate readings stabilize (up to 60 seconds).

4. To change settings, reference "Setting Alarm Limits" procedure.

   OR

   -- Continued on Next Page --
Monitoring Mode (Continued)

To accept settings and begin monitoring, press ENTER key.

- **ETCO2 Main** screen displays following information:
  - Capnography waveform (scale adjustable).
  - EtCO₂ value, as well as minimum and maximum EtCO₂ alarm limits.
  - Limit Mode (Adult or Neonatal).
  - Respiratory rate (RR, breaths/min), as well as minimum and maximum RR alarm limits.

**NOTE:**

1. PC Unit display response time is approximately ½ second longer than the EtCO₂ Module response time.

### Setting Alarm Limits

1. Press **LIMITS** soft key.

2. To change a limit setting, press soft key next to applicable parameter.

3. Enter a numeric value for selected alarm limit.

4. To move to next limit, press **ENTER** key.

5. To confirm alarm settings and return to **ETCO2 Main** display, press **CONFIRM** soft key.

6. To return to Main Display, press **MAIN SCREEN** soft key.
Navigating Trend Data

1. To view Trend Data, press **TREND** soft key.

   Following information displays:
   - **TIME** period for data review.
   - Average **ETCO2** with high and low values.
   - Average respiratory rate (**RR**) with high and low values.
   - Alarm icon (△) with Fi in **TIME** column, to indicate high FiCO₂ alarm limit has been exceeded.
   - Alarm icon (△) to indicate an alarm limit has been exceeded.

2. To navigate from page to page, press **PAGE UP** and **PAGE DOWN** soft keys.

3. To scroll data 1 row at a time, press ▼ or ► key.

4. To change **TIME** increments for data review, move cursor to desired time period and press **ZOOM** soft key.
   - New time increments display.
   - Each press of **ZOOM** soft key changes time increments.

5. To return to **ETCO2 Main** display, press **ETCO2 MAIN** soft key.

6. To return to Main Display, press **MAIN SCREEN** soft key.
Navigating Trend Data (Continued)

NOTES:
1. Tabular information is not updated while the Trend Data view is displayed. The tabular data is updated, using the new trend data stored in the EtCO₂ Module, after leaving the Trend Data view. To view the latest data, return to the Trend Data view.
2. If no EtCO₂ or respiratory rate values are available for the time period displayed, dashes (---) are displayed.

Navigating PCA / EtCO₂ Trend Data

To access and view shared trend data when an Alaris® PCA Module is present, perform the following steps.

1. To view ETCO₂ Main display, press CHANNEL SELECT key.
2. To access option to view trend data, press OPTIONS key.
3. To view Trend Data, press PCA/EtCO₂ Trend data soft key.

Following information displays:
- TIME period for data review.
- Average ETCO₂.
- Average respiratory rate (RR).
- Alarm icon ( ).
- TOTAL DOSE of medication infused through PCA Module (includes continuous infusion, loading dose, bolus, and PCA dose).

4. For instructions on how to perform following, reference "Navigating Trend Data" procedure.
   - Navigate from page to page.
   - Change TIME increments.
   - Return to ETCO₂ MAIN display.
   - Return to Main Display.

**NOTES:**
- Tabular information is not updated while the Trend Data view is displayed. The tabular data is updated, using the new trend data stored in the EtCO₂ Module, after leaving the Trend Data view. To view the latest data, return to the Trend Data view.
- If no EtCO₂ or respiratory rate values are available for the time period displayed, dashes (---) are displayed.
Monitoring Mode (Continued)

Presilencing Alarm

1. To presilence alarm, press SILENCE key.
   • All monitoring alarms are silenced for 120 seconds. Infusion alarms are not silenced.

2. To cancel presilence alarm and return to alarmable mode:
   • Press CHANNEL SELECT key.
   • Press CANCEL SILENCE soft key.

Channel Options

Changing Limit Mode

The following procedure can be performed only when the Guardrails® Suite MX is not enabled (profile option not being used for programming).

1. Press Limit Mode soft key.
Changing Limit Mode (Continued)

2. To change Limit Mode Setup, press applicable soft key.

   OR

   To leave Limit Mode Setup unchanged and return to ETCO2 Main display, press EXIT soft key.

Changing Waveform Height

1. Press Waveform height soft key.

2. To change Waveform Height, select applicable range limit.
   - **60 mmHg**: Displays a waveform for EtCO₂ values within 0 – 60 mmHg range. If EtCO₂ value exceeds that range, Waveform Out of Range; Adjust Scaling message displays until waveform falls back into range or 0 – 99 mmHg option is selected.
   - **99 mmHg**: Displays a waveform for full EtCO₂ value range, 0 – 99 mmHg.

3. To return to ETCO2 Main display, press EXIT soft key.
1. Press **Waveform time scale** soft key.

2. To change **Waveform Time Scale**, select applicable time scale.

   **OR**

   To leave **Waveform Time Scale** unchanged and return to **ETCO2 Main** display, press **EXIT** soft key.
Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU, “General Setup and Operation”, for various “system” start-up and setup procedures.
EtCO₂ and respiratory rate readings can be affected by certain ambient environmental and patient conditions.

The EtCO₂ Module is not to be used as an apnea monitor.

The EtCO₂ Module is intended only as an adjunct in patient assessment. It must be used in conjunction with clinical signs and symptoms.

If uncertain about measurement accuracy, assess patient's condition and vital signs by alternate means, then ensure EtCO₂ Module is functioning correctly.

Do not lift the EtCO₂ Module by Microstream® Disposable because it may disconnect from the instrument, causing it to drop on the patient. Do not place the EtCO₂ Module in any position that may cause it to fall onto the patient.

Do not use the EtCO₂ Module or Microstream® Disposable inside a hyperbaric chamber.

Respond immediately to system alarms; patient monitoring may cease under certain alarm conditions.
• Do not use a connector or Microstream® Disposable that appears damaged.

• The Microstream® Disposable disconnect error message and associated alarm indicate the Microstream® Disposable is disconnected. Check the Microstream® Disposable connection and, if necessary, replace the Microstream® Disposable.

• Use only Microstream® Disposables. Use of a disposable other than those specified may cause improper EtCO₂ Module performance, resulting in inaccurate readings. For a list of compatible disposables, reference the Microstream® Disposable Compatibility Card (provided separately).

• Before use, read Microstream® Disposable directions for use, including all warnings, cautions and instructions.

• Carefully locate the patient Microstream® Disposable to reduce the possibility of patient entanglement or strangulation.

CAUTIONS

• Do not immerse or dampen the Microstream® Disposable.

• The Microstream® Disposables are designed for single patient use and are not to be reprocessed. Do not attempt to disinfect or flush the disposable as the EtCO₂ Module can be damaged.

When selecting a Microstream® Disposable, consider the patient’s weight, condition and intubation status. For more information on Microstream® Disposables, contact Oridion at http://www.ORIDION.com or 1-888-ORIDION.

For a list of compatible disposables, reference the Sensor and Cable Compatibility Card (provided separately).
## Features and Displays

### Features and Definitions

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system features and definitions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BPM</td>
<td>Breaths per minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capnography Waveform</td>
<td>Real-time graphical display of CO₂ concentration throughout respiration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Display</td>
<td>Waveforms, trended data, and numerical values are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtCO₂</td>
<td>CO₂ concentration in mmHg at end of exhalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FiCO₂</td>
<td>Fractional-inspired CO₂; CO₂ concentration present during inhalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit Mode</td>
<td>If operating outside of Guardrails® Data Set, limit mode can be changed for adult or neonatal default configuration settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microstream® Disposable</td>
<td>Oridion’s line of Microstream® Disposables are available for neonatal, pediatric and adult patients. Patients may be intubated or nonintubated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Programmable Alarm Limits</td>
<td>Alarm limits for EtCO₂, FiCO₂, respiration rates and No Breath time periods are programmable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory Rate</td>
<td>Patient’s respiratory rate in breaths per minute (breaths/minute).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trend Data</td>
<td>Tabular display of EtCO₂ and respiratory rate. Display shows average, high and low values and alarm conditions for time period displayed. Up to 24 hours of data is stored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operating Features, Controls, Indicators

**Status Indicators**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm</th>
<th>Monitor</th>
<th>Standby</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(red)</td>
<td>(green)</td>
<td>(yellow)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **IUI Connector, Left** (not visible)
- **IUI Connector, Right**
- **EtCO₂ mmHg Display**
- **Respiratory Rate Display**
- **Channel (module) Message Display**
- **Protective Door**
- **Microstream® Disposable Connector** (Gas Inlet)
- **Module Release Latch**: When pressed, allows module to be removed.

**Channel (module) Select Key**: When pressed, selects corresponding module for patient monitoring and setup.

**Channel (module) Identification**

**Monitor Key**: When pressed, begins patient monitoring.

**Channel (module) Off Key**: When pressed and held until a beep is heard, stops operation of that module, deselects that module, and if only that module had been operating, system powers down. Repeat for other operating modules to power off each module.

**Gas Exhaust**: Gas scavenging system connection.
The displays illustrated throughout this document are for illustration purposes only. The display content will vary, depending on configuration settings, type of disposable in use, hospital-defined data set uploaded using the Guardrails® Suite MX, programmed parameters, and many other variables.

**Main Display**

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU.

**Configurable Settings**

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system configurable settings.

If the configuration settings need to be changed from the "Factory Default" settings, reference the applicable Technical Service Manual or contact Cardinal Health Technical Support, for technical, troubleshooting, and preventive maintenance information.

With the Profiles feature enabled, the settings are configured independently for each profile. A hospital-defined, best-practice data set must be uploaded to enable the Profiles feature. Date and Time is a system setting and is the same in all profiles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EtCO₂ Alarm Limit, High</td>
<td>Adult: 60 mmHg</td>
<td>5 - 99 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal: 60 mmHg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtCO₂ Alarm Limit, Low</td>
<td>Adult: 10 mmHg</td>
<td>0 - 98 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal: 10 mmHg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FiCO₂ Alarm Limit, High</td>
<td>Adult: 8 mmHg</td>
<td>2 - 99 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal: 8 mmHg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit Mode</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>Adult or Neonatal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Breath Alarm</td>
<td>Adult: 30 sec</td>
<td>10 - 60 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal: 20 sec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory Rate Alarm Limit, High</td>
<td>Adult Mode: 35 bpm</td>
<td>1 - 150 bpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal Mode: 150 bpm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory Rate Alarm Limit, Low</td>
<td>Adult Mode: 6 bpm</td>
<td>0 - 149 bpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal Mode: 12 bpm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Specifications and Symbols

Specifications

Accuracy:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CO₂ Partial Pressure (at sea level)</th>
<th>Accuracy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 - 38 mmHg</td>
<td>±2 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 - 99 mmHg</td>
<td>± (5% of reading + 0.08% for every 1 mmHg above 38 mmHg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Above 55°C module temperature, ±1 mmHg or 2.5% (whichever is greater), has to be added to tolerance of accuracy specifications.

Respiration Rate: Measured in range of 0 - 150 bpm with following accuracy:

0 - 70 bpm: ±1 bpm
71 - 120 bpm: ±2 bpm
121 - 150 bpm: ±3 bpm

Alarm Limits:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Low</th>
<th>High</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EtCO₂:</td>
<td>High EtCO₂:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 - 98 mmHg</td>
<td>5 - 99 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FiCO₂:</td>
<td>High FiCO₂:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>2 - 99 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Breath:</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 - 60 sec</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiration Rate:</td>
<td>0 - 149 breaths/min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alarms:
Audible and visual alarms for high and low EtCO₂ and respiratory rate, high FiCO₂, Microstream® Disposable condition, system failure, no breath, and low battery conditions.

Barometric Pressure:
ETCO₂ Module is equipped with automatic barometric pressure compensation and fully complies with EN 864/1997 standards. There are no quantitative effects of barometric pressure for this device.

CO₂ Range:
Measures and reports partial pressures of CO₂ in the range of 0 - 99 mmHg at sea level. EtCO₂ and FiCO₂ values are calculated for all valid breaths.

Dimensions:
3.3"W x 8.9"H x 5.5"D
(8.4 cm W x 22.6 cm H x 14 cm D)

Electrical Classification:
Class 1, internally powered equipment, Type BF Defibrillator Proof
### Specifications and Symbols (Continued)

#### Specifications (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Conditions:</th>
<th>Operating</th>
<th>Storage/Transport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Altitude:</td>
<td>-380 - 4570 m (-1250 - 15,000 ft)</td>
<td>-380 - 4570 m (-1250 - 15,000 ft)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmospheric Pressure:</td>
<td>525 - 795 mmHg (700 - 1060 hPa)</td>
<td>375 - 760 mmHg (500 - 1013 hPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Humidity:</td>
<td>20 - 90% Noncondensing</td>
<td>5 - 85% Noncondensing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound Pressure:</td>
<td>34.9 db</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Range:</td>
<td>41 - 104°F (5 - 40°C)</td>
<td>-4 - 140°F (-20 - 60°C)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Flow Rate:** Nominally 50 mL/min -7.5 +15 mL/min

**Fluid Ingress Protection:** IPX1, Drip Proof

**Frequency Response:** ETCO₂ accuracy applies for breath rates of up to 80 bpm. For maintaining accuracy for respiration rates above 80 bpm, accuracy complies with EN 864/ISO 9918 (4 mmHg or ±12% of reading, whichever is greater) for ETCO₂ values exceeding 18 mmHg. To achieve specified accuracies for breath rates above 60 bpm, Microstream® neonatal airway adapter M1996A must be used.

**Gas Interference:** Following have been tested and were found to have no effect:
- Desflurane
- Enflurane
- Halothane
- Isoflurane
- Sevoflurane

**Internal Power Source:** Operating time (fully charged): 5.5 hours

**Measurement Range:**
- ETCO₂: 0 - 99 mmHg
- FiCO₂: 0 - 99 mmHg
- Respiratory Rate: 0 - 150 bpm

**Mode of Operation:** Continuous

**System Response Time:**
- ETCO₂ Module response: 2.9 seconds typical (includes rise time of 190 msec maximum and delay time of 2.7 seconds typical).
- PC Unit display response: approximately ½ second longer than ETCO₂ Module response.
The EtCO₂ Module has been designed and manufactured to exacting standards and should perform well within given environmental and performance standards. There may be certain conditions under which an inaccurate measurement or the loss of respiratory rate signal may occur. Examples of these conditions are as follows:

An inaccurate EtCO₂ measurement may be caused by:

- Incorrect disposable application or use.
- Microstream® Disposable disconnected or not securely connected to EtCO₂ Module.
- Airway connection clogged, twisted, or leaking.
- Placement too close to electrosurgery equipment.
- Mechanically ventilated patient breathes spontaneously.

**WARNINGS**

- If uncertain about measurement accuracy, assess patient’s condition and vital signs by alternate means, then ensure EtCO₂ Module is functioning correctly.
- Leaks or internal venting of sampled gas may affect accuracy.
Measurement Accuracy (Continued)

Loss of a respiratory rate signal can occur in any of the following situations:

- Incorrect disposable application or use.
- Microstream® Disposable disconnected or not securely connected to EtCO₂ Module.
- Airway connection clogged, twisted, or leaking.
- Patient not breathing.
- Placement too close to electrosurgery equipment.

Waveform Analysis

The EtCO₂ Module provides the option to display EtCO₂ readings as a waveform. The following is an example of a normal waveform (normal ventilation, 35 - 45 mmHg).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Waveform</th>
<th>Possible Causes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypoventilation</td>
<td>overmedication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperventilation</td>
<td>respiratory distress</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Waveforms can be used to troubleshoot problems with equipment or monitor configuration, as well as to monitor a patient’s clinical status. The following are examples of common problems identifiable through waveform analysis. These are examples only and do not represent all potential abnormal waveforms. Abnormal waveforms are not always associated with alarms.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Waveform</th>
<th>Possible Causes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partial Airway Obstruction</td>
<td>• relaxation of upper airway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• head position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoventilation with Shallow</td>
<td>• medication effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breathing</td>
<td>• low tidal volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Breath Detected</td>
<td>• apnea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• very shallow breathing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• overmedication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• displaced cannula</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:**

① In the event the EtCO₂ value is above the waveform display range, the top of the waveform will be clipped. Numerical EtCO₂ values continue to be displayed on both the EtCO₂ Module and PC Unit.

**Principle of Operation**

The EtCO₂ Module uses Oridion’s patented Microstream® nondispersive infrared (NDIR) spectroscopy to continuously measure the amount of CO₂ during every breath, the amount of CO₂ present at the end of exhalation (EtCO₂) and during inhalation (FiCO₂), and the Respiratory Rate. The EtCO₂ Module is a side stream capnograph.

The Microstream® Disposables deliver a sample of the inhaled and exhaled gases from the ventilator disposable or directly from the patient (via an oral/nasal cannula) into the monitor for CO₂ measurement. Moisture and patient secretions are extracted from the sample by the Microstream® inline filter while maintaining the shape of the CO₂ waveform.
The 50 mL/min sampling flow rate reduces liquid and secretion accumulation, decreasing the risk of obstruction in the sample pathway in humid ICU environments. The small sample size eliminates the need for water traps and prevents excess fluid accumulation.

The EtCO₂ Module draws a gas sample through a microsample cell (15 microliters). This extremely small volume is quickly flushed, allowing for a rise time of approximately 190 ms and accurate CO₂ readings, even at high respiration rates.

The Microbeam IR source illuminates the microsample cell and the reference channel. This proprietary IR light source generates only the specific wavelengths characteristic of the CO₂ absorption spectrum. The IR light that passes through the microsample cell and the IR light that passes through the reference channel are measured by IR detectors.

The microcomputer in the EtCO₂ Module calculates the CO₂ concentration by comparing the signals from both channels.

No operator intervention is required for routine moisture or condensate.

All Microstream® Disposables contain an inline hydrophobic filter to extract condensate and/or patient secretions while maintaining measurement and waveform integrity. For humid conditions within the operating parameters of the EtCO₂ Module and Microstream® Disposables, humidity has no quantitative effect on the CO₂ concentration, given the small 50 mL/min sample size rate. In high humidity environments or extended monitoring periods (24 - 72 hours), only Microstream® Disposables designed for those instances should be used. In the event of humidity or condensate outside the EtCO₂ Module’s operating specifications, the EtCO₂ Module will present a “Remove Blocked Disposable” message.

Due to the relatively small sampling size needed for EtCO₂ readings, partial pressure does not affect the ability of the EtCO₂ Module to measure EtCO₂, as long as the 50 mL/min rate can be achieved.
Microstream® Disposables are single-use, disposables which must be changed with each use. The manufacturer’s sample flow, 50 ml/min, does not affect the disposable’s life; however, humidity and specific patient conditions may shorten the effective life of the disposables. Microstream® Disposables are rated for up to 24 hours and 72 hours use, depending on the specific Microstream® Disposable.

The EtCO₂ Module provides readings in compliance with BTPS (body temperature, pressure, saturation) standards. There is no affect on accuracy due to cyclic pressure up to 10 kPa.

**NOTE:**

1. BTPS (body temperature, pressure, saturation assumed 37°C, 47 mmHg) calculations are made according to:

   \[ PCO_2 = FCO_2 \times (Pb - 47) \]

   Where:

   - \( FCO_2 \) is fractional concentration of \( CO_2 \) in dry gas and \( FCO_2 = %CO_2/100. \)
   - \( Pb \) is ambient pressure.
   - \( PCO_2 \) is partial pressure of \( CO_2 \) at BTPS.
The EtCO₂ Module Technical Service Manual is available from Cardinal Health. It includes routine service schedules, interconnect diagrams, component parts lists and descriptions, test procedures, and other technical information, to assist qualified service personnel in repair and maintenance of the instrument’s repairable components. Maintenance procedures are intended to be performed only by qualified personnel, using the Service Manual, Maintenance Software and Software User Manual.

**Alarms and Messages**

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for the following system references:

- Alarms, Errors, Messages
- Audio Characteristics
- Definitions
- Radio Frequency Note

**Definitions**

**Calibration Check**

A technical procedure, outlined in Technical Service Manual, to verify instrument calibration. When instrument reaches operating hour requirement (4000 hours or 1 year, whichever comes first), "Calibration Check Required" message appears at each system power up until calibration check is performed. Once check is completed, message disappears and internal clock resets.
## Audio Characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EtCO₂ Alarm (HIGH PRIORITY)</td>
<td>A sequence of 5 beeps</td>
<td>Variable volume; can be silenced for 2 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtCO₂ Alarm (LOW PRIORITY)</td>
<td>One long beep approximately every 4 seconds</td>
<td>Variable volume; can be silenced for 2 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtCO₂ Error (Hardware Detected)</td>
<td>A single alarm tone volume</td>
<td>Fixed maximum decibel volume; cannot be silenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtCO₂ Error (Software Detected)</td>
<td>Pairs of long beeps</td>
<td>Fixed maximum decibel volume; can be silenced for 2 minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Alarms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>High Priority Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHANNEL ERROR</td>
<td>Hardware failure detected by software.</td>
<td>To silence alarm and continue operation of unaffected instrument, press CONFIRM soft key. Replace with operational instrument, as needed. Service by qualified personnel required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISPOSABLE DISCONNECTED</td>
<td>Microstream® Disposable removed from instrument during monitoring mode.</td>
<td>Attach Microstream® Disposable to instrument.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH ETCO₂</td>
<td>EtCO₂ value is above specified limit.</td>
<td>Assess patient condition. Confirm correct alarm limit values are selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH FI CO₂</td>
<td>FiCO₂ value is above specified limit.</td>
<td>Assess patient condition. Confirm correct alarm limit values are selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH RR</td>
<td>Respiratory rate is above specified limit.</td>
<td>Assess patient condition. Confirm correct alarm limit values are selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOW ETCO₂</td>
<td>EtCO₂ value is below specified limit.</td>
<td>Assess patient condition. Confirm correct alarm limit values are selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Alarms and Messages (Continued)

### Alarms (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>High Priority Alarm</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOW RR</td>
<td>Respiratory rate is below specified limit.</td>
<td>Assess patient condition. Confirm correct alarm limit values are selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO BREATH DETECTED</td>
<td>No breath detected for a specified period of time.</td>
<td>Assess patient condition. Check Microstream® Disposable. Confirm correct disposable is chosen and correct disposable placement.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Low Priority Alarm

| Disconnect Occluded Disposable | Purging operation failed | Check Microstream® Disposable. Obtain a new Microstream® Disposable. Attach Microstream® Disposable to patient and module. |

### Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autozero (in progress)</td>
<td>EtCO₂ Module performs a baseline by sampling CO₂ present in ambient air.</td>
<td>Wait for instrument to complete its auto-zeroing function. After auto-zero cycle is complete, instrument will begin measurement again. No user intervention is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearing Disposable</td>
<td>Microstream® Disposable blocked.</td>
<td>Check Microstream® Disposable. Wait for purging to complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disposable Disconnected</td>
<td>No Microstream® Disposable present and instrument not in monitoring mode.</td>
<td>Attach Microstream® Disposable to patient and instrument to begin monitoring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient Not Detected</td>
<td><strong>Monitor or Channel Select</strong> key pressed and patient not detected.</td>
<td>Assess patient condition. Check disposable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alaris® System Directions for Use
EtCO₂ Module Section

Troubleshooting and Maintenance 5-29
To ensure the system remains in good operating condition, both regular and preventive maintenance inspections are required. Reference the Maintenance Software and Software User Manual (v8.1 or later) for detailed instructions.

### Inspection Requirements

To ensure the system remains in good operating condition, both regular and preventive maintenance inspections are required. Reference the Maintenance Software and Software User Manual (v8.1 or later) for detailed instructions.

### REGULAR INSPECTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROCEDURE</th>
<th>FREQUENCY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INSPECT FOR DAMAGE:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUI Connector</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keypad</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEANING</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START-UP</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**

Failure to perform these inspections may result in improper instrument operation.

**CAUTION**

Regular and preventive maintenance inspections should only be performed by qualified service personnel.
Alaris® Auto-ID Module
8600 Series
# Table of Contents

**GETTING STARTED**

- **INTRODUCTION** ......................................................... 6-1

**PROGRAMMING**

- **PATIENT IDENTIFICATION** ........................................... 6-3
  - New Patient .............................................................. 6-3
  - While Infusion is in Progress .................................... 6-4
- **AUTHORIZED USER MODE** ............................................ 6-5
- **PRIMARY INFUSION** .................................................. 6-6
- **SECONDARY INFUSION** ................................................ 6-7

**GENERAL SETUP AND OPERATION**

- **SYSTEM START-UP / SETUP** ....................................... 6-9

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

- **WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS** ....................................... 6-11
- **HAND-HELD SCANNER** .............................................. 6-12
- **FEATURES** .................................................................. 6-12
  - Features and Definitions ........................................... 6-12
  - Operating Features, Controls, Indicators ....................... 6-13
- **CONFIGURABLE SETTINGS** .......................................... 6-14
- **SPECIFICATIONS AND SYMBOLS** .............................. 6-14
  - Specifications .......................................................... 6-14
  - Symbology ............................................................... 6-15
  - Symbols ..................................................................... 6-16

**TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE**

- **GENERAL** ............................................................... 6-17
- **INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS** .................................... 6-17
Introduction

This Section of the Directions for Use (DFU) provides Alaris® Auto-ID Module, 8600 Series ("Auto-ID Module"), instructions and information. It is used in conjunction with the following:

- Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit ("PC Unit") Section of this DFU
- Maintenance Software and User Manual for Alaris® System
- Alaris® System Technical Service Manuals
- Module-Specific Sections of this DFU

The addition of the Auto-ID Module to the Alaris® System combines Guardrails® Suite MX with dose limit technology and bar code technology to provide a new level of medication safety. The Auto-ID Module contains an internal bar code image scanner and supports the external scanner supplied by Cardinal Health. Using the scanner allows an IV solution drug and concentration to be automatically selected. In addition to drug and concentration, the Auto-ID Module allows for patient association with the PC Unit. Scanning a bar-coded patient identification band automatically captures the patient ID, making it available for association with CQI event logs as well as for verifying the right patient. Scanned solution containers can be used for Pump, Syringe and PCA infusions. Only 1 Auto-ID Module can be connected to the Alaris® System.

The Alaris® System with the Auto-ID Module is intended to provide trained healthcare caregivers a way to automate infusion parameter input, thereby decreasing the number of manual steps necessary to enter infusion data. All data entry and infusion parameter validation is performed by the trained healthcare professional according to a physician’s order.

Electromagnetic Environment: Reference "Appendix" Section of this DFU ("Regulations and Standards", Compliance").
Patient Identification

Associating the PC Unit with a patient provides a means of identifying the device(s) that will deliver IV medications to that particular patient.

New Patient

To associate the PC Unit with a new patient ID:

1. Attach hand-held scanner to connection port on Auto-ID Module. Ensure secure circuit connection.

2. Power on PC Unit.


4. To accept current profile, press Yes soft key.

OR

To proceed to profile selection screen, press No soft key.

- Patient ID Entry screen appears.
- Green READY LED illuminates, indicating system is ready to scan.

5. To accept profile selection, press CONFIRM soft key.

- Panel Lock screen appears.

WARNING

Use only the hand-held external scanner supplied by Cardinal Health. Using other accessories may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the Alaris® System.
6-4 Programming Alaris® System Directions for Use
Auto-ID Module Section

Patient Identification (Continued)

New Patient (Continued)

6. To scan bar code on patient identification band, press scan trigger on hand-held scanner. ② ③
   • If scan is successful, an audible tone sounds and patient ID displays on Main Display.

7. To unlock panel, clinician's ID must be scanned.

CAUTIONS
• CLASS 1 LED PRODUCT: Do not stare into the beam or allow beam to strike patient's face.
• Always verify that information displayed on the PC Unit matches scanned data.

NOTES:
① Automatic display of Patient ID Entry screen should be enabled in the System Configuration settings.
② If the patient ID is not entered at this time, it can still be entered later.
③ Patient ID may be entered manually using the PC Unit keypad (reference PC Unit Section of this DFU).

While Infusion is in Progress

To associate the PC Unit with a patient ID when patient ID screen is not shown:

1. Attach hand-held scanner to connection port on Auto-ID Module. Ensure secure circuit connection.
2. Press OPTIONS key.
   • Systems Options menu appears.

6-4 Programming Alaris® System Directions for Use
Auto-ID Module Section
3. Press Patient ID soft key.
   • Patient ID Entry screen appears.
   • Green READY LED illuminates, indicating system is ready to scan.

4. To scan bar code on patient identification band, press scan trigger on hand-held scanner.①
   • If scan is successful, an audible tone sounds and patient ID displays on Main Display.

NOTE:
① Patient ID may be entered manually using the PC Unit keypad (reference PC Unit Section of this DFU).

CAUTIONS

• CLASS 1 LED PRODUCT: Do not stare into the beam or allow beam to strike patient's face.
• Always verify that information displayed on the PC Unit matches scanned data.

Authorized User Mode ②③

Authorized User Mode is a feature that combines the PC Unit tamper resist feature with the Auto-ID application. This feature is designed to ensure that only clinicians with a bar code on their ID badge can program the Alaris® System.

When this feature is enabled, the PC Unit automatically enables tamper resist mode upon power on and 5 minutes after programming is completed. To unlock the keypad, the user must scan their ID badge.

To power on the PC Unit with Authorized User Mode enabled:

1. Power on system and associate patient ID (reference "Patient Identification" procedure).
   • Upon successful entry of patient ID, PC Unit automatically enables tamper resist feature.

2. To disable tamper resist, press SCAN key and scan ID badge.
Authorized User Mode (Continued)

3. Program infusion.
   - When no keys have been pressed on PC Unit for a five-minute period, tamper resist mode is automatically enabled.

NOTES:

1. The Authorized User Mode is only enabled if the feature is enabled in the selected profile and if there is an Auto-ID Module attached to the PC Unit.

2. If the system is configured to do so, it is possible to disable the Authorized User Mode without scanning a clinician's ID; press and hold the Tamper Resist Switch (on back of PC Unit) for 3 - 4 seconds.

3. In a very low battery condition, with less than 5 minutes of battery time remaining, the scanner is disabled. In this situation, disable tamper resist by pressing the Tamper Resist Switch on the back of the PC Unit for 2 seconds.

Primary Infusion

Utilizing the Auto-ID Module to scan IV medication containers provides the ability to verify the right medication and concentration, and enhances safety through the use of the Guardrails® Suite MX. It compares the medication identifier from the IV container bar code with the medication identifier from the Guardrails® Drug Library. If the patient ID is in the IV container bar code, the system also verifies the right patient.

When the green READY LED illuminates, the system is ready to scan.

1. To scan bar code on IV container, press SCAN/CANCEL key on Auto-ID Module or scan trigger on hand-held scanner.

CAUTIONS

- CLASS 1 LED PRODUCT: Do not stare into the beam or allow beam to strike patient's face.
- Always verify that information displayed on the PC Unit matches scanned data.
Primary Infusion (Continued)

2. Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key on appropriate module.  
3. Program infusion (reference applicable module-specific Section of this DFU).

NOTES:

1. The Alaris® System determines if the module selected is appropriate for the scanned medication type. If the selection is not appropriate (for example, a bag was scanned but a PCA Module channel was selected), a pop-up warning displays with a request to **CONFIRM** the message, and the scan is cancelled.

2. If a continuous Guardrails® Infusion is running, the system checks to verify scanned and infusing medication and concentration are the same. If not, an error message displays with a request to **CONFIRM** the message, and the scan is cancelled.

Secondary Infusion

To start a secondary infusion while a primary infusion is in progress:

1. To scan bar code on IV container, press **SCAN/CANCEL** key on Auto-ID Module or scan trigger on hand-held scanner.

2. Press **CHANNEL SELECT** key on appropriate module.
   • Primary infusion parameters display.

3. Press **SECONDARY** soft key.

4. Program secondary infusion (reference Pump Module Section of this DFU).

CAUTIONS

- **CLASS 1 LED PRODUCT**: Do not stare into the beam or allow beam to strike patient's face.
- **Always verify** that information displayed on the PC Unit matches scanned data.
Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU, "General Setup and Operation", for various "system" start-up and setup procedures.
WARNINGS

- Do not open the hand-held scanner case. If the case is opened, an electrical shock hazard and possible exposure to potentially hazardous LED light exists which can result in serious personal injury and product damage.

- Carefully locate the hand-held scanner to reduce the possibility of patient entanglement or strangulation.

- Use only the hand-held external scanner supplied by Cardinal Health. Using other accessories may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the Alaris® System.

CAUTION

Class 1 LED devices are safe under reasonably foreseeable conditions of operation, including the use of optical instruments for intrabeam viewing. To avoid potential harm, avoid looking into the beam or allowing the beam to strike the patient's face.
Hand-Held Scanner

The hand-held external scanner supplied by Cardinal Health is the only hand-held scanner approved for use with the Auto-ID Module.

WARNINGS
- Do not open the hand-held scanner case. If the case is opened, an electrical shock hazard and possible exposure to potentially hazardous LED light exists which can result in serious personal injury and product damage.
- Use only the hand-held external scanner supplied by Cardinal Health. Using other accessories may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the Alaris® System.

CAUTION
CLASS 1 LED PRODUCT: Do not stare into the beam or allow beam to strike patient's face.

Features

Features and Definitions

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system features and definitions.

Audible Scan Indicator
Provides audible confirmation of a successful scan.

Bar Code
A machine-readable label used for automatic identification. Automatic identification (Auto-ID) is the broad term given to a host of technologies used to help machines identify objects and is often coupled with automatic data capture. These technologies include bar codes, smart cards, voice recognition, some biometric technologies (for example, retinal scans), optical character recognition and others.

Built-In Optical Scan Engine
Employs technology similar to a digital camera to read bar codes. Allows use of two-dimensional bar codes.
Features (Continued)

Features and Definitions (Continued)

Hand-Held Scanner with Optical Scan Engine
Allows scanning of patient ID, and of IV containers that have already been hung on IV pole.

Light Emitting Diode (LED)
Bar code scanner uses an array of high intensity LEDs to illuminate bar code image. (Reference “Specifications”).

Two-Dimensional Bar Code
Can contain more information and is more easily read by Auto-ID Module; for example, patient ID and drug ID can be in same bar code.

Operating Features, Controls, Indicators

- **READY Indicator:** Green LED illuminates to provide visual confirmation that module or hand-held scanner is ready to scan.
- **SCAN/CANCEL Key:** When initially pressed, scanning by embedded scanner is initiated. Subsequent press cancels scan.
- **Image Scanning Window**
- **Hand-hand external scanner connection port.**
- **Module Release Latch:** When pressed, allows module to be removed.
Configurable Settings

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system configurable settings.

If the configuration settings need to be changed from the "Factory Default" settings, reference the applicable Technical Service Manual or contact Cardinal Health Technical Support, for technical, troubleshooting, and preventive maintenance information.

With the Profiles feature enabled, the settings are configured independently for each profile. A hospital-defined, best-practice data set must be uploaded to enable the Profiles feature. Date and Time is a system setting and is the same in all profiles.

Specifications and Symbols

Specifications

Auto-ID Module and Hand-Held Scanner

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Conditions:</th>
<th>Operating</th>
<th>Storage/Transport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atmospheric Pressure:</td>
<td>525 - 4560 mmHg</td>
<td>375 - 760 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(700 - 6080 hPa)</td>
<td>(500 - 1013 hPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Humidity:</td>
<td>20 - 90%</td>
<td>5 - 85%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Noncondensing</td>
<td>Noncondensing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Range:</td>
<td>41 - 104°F</td>
<td>-4 - 140°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5 - 40°C)</td>
<td>(-20 - 60°C)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LED Light: CLASS 1 LED PRODUCT

Aiming LED: 523 nm, cw, 0.412 mW average radiant power

Illumination LED: 635 nm, cw, 2.226 mW average radiant power
Specifications and Symbols (Continued)

Auto-ID Module

Dimensions: 2.0”W x 7.25”H x 5.0”D
(5.1 cm W x 19.8 cm H x 12.7 cm D)

Electrical Classification: Class 1, internally powered equipment

Electronic Memory: System configuration parameters stored in volatile memory are retained for at least 6 months by PC Unit internal backup lithium battery. Module-specific Auto-ID parameters are stored for 8 hours by PC Unit when system is turned off. After 8 hours of continuous off time, or if module is changed, system automatically purges module-specific information

Fluid Ingress Protection: IPX1, Drip Proof

Mode of Operation: Continuous

Weight: 1 ±0.1 lb (436.5 ±43.65 g)

Hand-Held Scanner

Dimensions: 3.25”W x 7.25”H x 4.25”L
(8.3 cm W x 18.4 cm H x 10.8 cm L)

Housing: UL94V0 grade

Weight: 6.5 oz (178 g)

Symbology

The Auto-ID Module and hand-held scanner can decode the following symbologies:

- Aztec Code
- Codabar
- Codablock F
- Code 128
- Code 16K
- Code 2 of 5
- Code 32 Pharmaceutical (PARAF)
- Code 39
- Code 49
- Code 93 and 93i
- Data Matrix
- EAN-8
- EAN/13
- EAN/UCC Composite
- MicroPDF417
- PDF417
- QR Code
- RSS-14
- RSS Expanded
- RSS Limited
- TCIF Linked Code 39 (TLC39)
- Trioptic Code
- UCC/EAN-128
**Symbols**

Reference the PC Unit Section of this DFU for system symbols.

Input. Hand-held connection point.
Alaris® System Technical Service Manuals are available from Cardinal Health. They include routine service schedules, interconnect diagrams, component parts lists and descriptions, test procedures, and other technical information, to assist qualified service personnel in repair and maintenance. Maintenance procedures are intended to be performed only by qualified personnel, using the Service Manual, Maintenance Software and Software User Manual.

**Inspection Requirements**

To ensure the system remains in good operating condition, both regular and preventive maintenance inspections are required. Reference the Maintenance Software and Software User Manual (v8.1 or later) for detailed instructions.

### REGULAR INSPECTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROCEDURE</th>
<th>FREQUENCY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INSPECT FOR DAMAGE:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Surfaces</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keypad</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical Parts</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seal</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLEANING</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START-UP</td>
<td>Each usage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**

Failure to perform these inspections may result in improper instrument operation.

**CAUTION**

Regular and preventive maintenance inspections should only be performed by qualified service personnel.
INTRODUCTION ........................................................................................................................................ 7-1

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS .................................................................................................................. 7-3
NURSE CALL JACK AND CABLE
  Nurse Call Location ................................................................................................................................. 7-4
  Nurse Call Cable Connected .................................................................................................................. 7-4

SPECIFICATIONS .................................................................................................................................. 7-5

TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE

GENERAL .................................................................................................................................................. 7-7
ALARMS, ERRORS, MESSAGES ............................................................................................................. 7-7
This Section of the Directions for Use (DFU) provides Nurse Call Accessory, Model 8010, instructions and information. It is used in conjunction with the following:

- Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit ("PC Unit") Section of this DFU
- Module-Specific Section of this DFU

The Nurse Call Accessory is an optional board installed in the PC Unit. It allows a nurse call system to be alerted when there is a significant alarm condition to the system. A contact closure routes the nurse call signal to the hospital-supplied nurse call system, and can either light a room light or send a signal/message to a console at the nurse station. A hospital-supplied cable is used to connect the Nurse Call Accessory to the hospital’s nurse call jack within the patient’s room. The wiring from the room to the nurse station is also hospital-supplied.

The Nurse Call Accessory uses a standard ¼" phone jack located on the rear panel of the PC Unit. A cover for the jack opening is supplied with the Nurse Call Accessory. The cover, used when the nurse call is not connected, prevents unwanted fluids and dust from entering the PC Unit.

The PC Unit is autoconfigurable and will detect the presence of the nurse call option. It cannot, however, detect whether or not the nurse call cable is connected; therefore, it is important that the operation of the nurse call system be tested before each use by causing an alarm and verifying actuation of the nurse call remote alarm indication. To test the system, a module must be attached. Reference the applicable module-specific Section of this DFU for alarm conditions.

**WARNING**

Read all instructions, including those for the PC Unit and attached module(s), before using the Alaris® System.
WARNINGS

• The nurse call feature should not be used as the primary source of alarm notification. The audible and visual alarms of the Alaris® System, used in conjunction with clinical signs and symptoms, are the primary sources providing notification that an alarm condition exists.

• Before each use, ensure the nurse call cable is fully inserted into the jack, and test the operation of the nurse call system by causing an alarm and verifying proper nurse call operation.

CAUTIONS

• To assure compliance with Electromagnetic Compatibility Standards (IEC 60601-1-2), the nurse call option must only be used with a properly configured hospital interface cable assembly. The approved hospital nurse call interface cable consists of an MCM Electronics 24–660 cable with an attached Fair-Rite Suppressor Core Assembly, P/N 0443167251. The Fair-Rite part is included with the Nurse Call Accessory. Refer to the cable assembly instructions, included with the Nurse Call Accessory, for additional information.

• When moving the PC Unit, ensure the nurse call cable is disconnected from the nurse call jack on the PC Unit and the fluid seal covers the jack opening.

• Carefully route cabling to reduce the possibility of entanglement that could result in a tripping hazard.
Nurse Call Accessory Section

Max Load: 30V/1A

NURSE CALL

Nurse Call Accessory
- Jack Cover closed.

Nurse Call Cable - Plugged into Nurse Call Jack.

Fair-Rite Suppressor Core Assembly

CAUTION

To prevent fluid contamination/ingress, always close the Jack Cover when the Nurse Call option is not in use.

NOTE:

1. The Communications Interface Board (Model 8012) cannot be used when the Nurse Call Accessory is installed.
## Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contact Closure Rating:</strong></td>
<td>30VDC maximum at 1A maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drip Proof Protection:</strong></td>
<td>To ensure Alaris® System fluid ingress rating, Nurse Call jack is covered/sealed when not in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Isolation:</strong></td>
<td>Nurse Call contacts are isolated from chassis up to 500VAC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User Accessible Connector:</strong></td>
<td>¼&quot; phone jack</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Alaris® System Technical Service Manual is available from Cardinal Health. It includes routine service schedules, interconnect diagrams, component parts lists and descriptions, test procedures, and other technical information, to assist qualified service personnel in repair and maintenance of the instrument’s repairable components. Maintenance procedures are intended to be performed only by qualified personnel, using the Service Manual, Maintenance Software and Maintenance Software User Manual.

Reference the PC Unit and module-specific Sections of this DFU for the following references:

Alarms, Errors, Messages
Audio Characteristics
Definitions
Radio Frequency Note
Communications Interface (CI) Board Accessory
Model 8012
# Table of Contents

## INTRODUCTION

## GENERAL INFORMATION

- CI BOARD ACCESSORY AND CI BOARD LED .......................................................... 8-3
- COMPUTER MONITOR MODE INDICATOR ............................................................... 8-3

## TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE

- GENERAL ............................................................................................................... 8-5
- CI BOARD AND ALARIS® SERVER CONNECTIONS .................................................. 8-5
- ALARMS, ERRORS, MESSAGES .............................................................................. 8-6
  - Messages ........................................................................................................... 8-6
This Section of the Directions for Use (DFU) provides Communications Interface Board Accessory ("CI Board") instructions and information. It is used in conjunction with the following:

- Alaris® PC Point-of-Care Unit ("PC Unit") Section of this DFU
- CI Board Installation Instructions
- Module-Specific Section of this DFU

The CI Board is intended to be used with an 802.11b 2.4 GHz DS wireless network. Once installed in the PC Unit, the CI Board provides wireless communication capability between the Alaris® System and Alaris® Server.

The combined use of the Alaris® System, CI Board, and Alaris® Server:

- Reduces number of manual steps needed to program an infusion (by providing information obtained from Alaris® Server). All data entry and validation of infusion parameters are performed, according to a physician's order, by a trained healthcare professional.
- Is integrated into a facility’s existing network infrastructure.

When enabled, the Alaris® Server allows the exchange of information between the Alaris® Server and the Alaris® System. The PC Unit can be operated manually or in concert with the information exchanged with the Alaris® Server. If communication with the wireless network is interrupted (for example, out of range), the Alaris® System can be used, as intended, in the manual mode.
CI Board Accessory and CI Board LED

CI Board LED
Flashes green when Alaris® System is powered up.

NOTE:
1. The Nurse Call Accessory (Model 8010) cannot be used when the CI Board is installed.

Computer Monitor Mode Indicator

Computer Monitor Mode Indicator:
When illuminated (solid green), indicates Alaris® System is operating in Computer Monitor mode.
Troubleshooting and Maintenance

General

The Alaris® System Technical Service Manual is available from Cardinal Health. It includes routine service schedules, interconnect diagrams, component parts lists and descriptions, test procedures, and other technical information, to assist qualified service personnel in repair and maintenance of the instrument’s repairable components. Maintenance procedures are intended to be performed only by qualified personnel, using the Service Manual, Maintenance Software and Maintenance Software User Manual.

The Installation Instructions for the CI Board provides CI Board testing and part information. The Installation Instructions are included as part of the CI Board Kit.

CI Board and Alaris® Server Connections

When the Alaris® System is powered up, the green LED on the CI Board flashes, indicating the board is operable. If the LED is not flashing, and powering the Alaris® System off and then back on does not correct it, the Alaris® System may require servicing.

When an Alaris® Server connection is made, the Computer Monitor Mode Indicator on the PC Unit is illuminated (green). If connection to the Alaris® Server is interrupted, the indicator light is extinguished. Some of the causes for a communications failure include:

- Alaris® Server computer not running
- wireless connection access point down
- local interference
- PC Unit moved outside coverage area

If an interruption to the Alaris® Server connection continues, the facility’s information technology department should be informed.
The CI Board has self-testing capability, both at power on and during normal operation. If communication with the CI Board fails, a visual message displays to indicate a communication error. A communication error to an outside access point does not cause a Alaris® System alarm or visual message.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NETWORK COMM ERROR</td>
<td>Communication error occurred between CI Board and Alaris® Server.</td>
<td>Power Alaris® System off and then back on. If error is repeated:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• To continue manual-only operation, press CONFIRM soft key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Replace PC Unit as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Refer instrument to be serviced by qualified personnel, to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- reprogram/reconfigure CI Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- verify wireless boot version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- replace CI Board, as necessary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix

Maintenance

Regulations and Standards
**Cleaning**

DO NOT spray cleaning fluids directly onto the instrument or immerse the instrument in fluids.

DO NOT use solutions containing phosphoric acid (Foamy Q&A), aromatic solvents (naphtha, paint thinner, etc.), chlorinated solvents (Trichloroethane, MEK, Toluene, etc.), ammonia, acetone, benzene, xylene or alcohol, other than as specified below.

DO NOT use hard or pointed objects to clean any part of the instrument.

Acceptable cleaning solutions are:

- 2% Glutaraldehyde in water
- 2% Phenols in water (O-Syl 1:128, Pheno-Cen 1:256, Vesphene)
- 10% bleach solution (1 part bleach to 9 parts water)
- 70% Isopropyl Alcohol
- CaviCide
- Compublend II
- Envirocide
- Hydrogen Peroxide 3%
- Mild detergent (such as, Manu-Klenz)
- Quaternaries 1:256 and 1:512
- Sani-Cloth
- Warm water
- WEX-CIDE

1. Keep instrument upright and do not allow any part of instrument to become saturated with or submerged in fluid during cleaning operation.

2. Use a soft cloth dampened with warm water and a mild nonabrasive cleaning solution to clean all exposed surfaces. For sanitizing or antibacterial treatment, use 10% bleach solution and water.

3. Use a soft cloth dampened with water to rinse off cleaning solution.

**NOTES:**

- Excluding 10% bleach solution in water.
- All recommended solutions must be diluted per the manufacturer’s recommendation.
- A soft-bristled brush may be used to clean hard to reach and narrow areas.

---

**WARNING**

Turn the instrument off and unplug the power cord from the AC power source **before cleaning**. Do not spray fluids directly onto the rear case of the instrument. Do not steam autoclave, EtO sterilize, immerse the instrument or allow fluids to enter the instrument case. Failure to follow these instructions may result in an electrical hazard.

**CAUTION**

The solutions/solvents identified as NOT to be used can damage the surfaces of the instrument.
If the instrument shows evidence of damage in transit, notify the carrier’s agent immediately. Do not return damaged equipment to the factory before the carrier’s agent has authorized repairs.

If the instrument fails to respond as described in this document and the cause cannot be determined, do not use the instrument. Contact qualified Cardinal Health service personnel.

If it is necessary to return the instrument for service, obtain a return authorization number prior to shipment. Carefully package the instrument (preferably in the original packaging), reference the return authorization information, and return it to the appropriate service or distribution center. Cardinal Health does not assume any responsibility for loss of, or damage to, returned instruments while in transit.

**Service Information**

**WARNINGS**

- The instrument case should only be opened by qualified personnel using proper grounding techniques. Prior to performing maintenance, disconnect attached module from the Alaris® System and the PC Unit from AC power.

- During servicing, an instrument’s configuration settings might be reset to the factory defaults. Qualified hospital/facility personnel are responsible for checking in the instrument and ensuring the current hospital-approved data set is loaded.

**Technical Support**

Technical support, service information, applications, and manuals may be obtained by contacting a Cardinal Health representative.

When submitting any request for service, include:

- model number
- a description of difficulty experienced
- instrument settings
- administration set/lot number
- solution(s) used
- message displayed at time of difficulty
WARRANTY

Cardinal Health warrants that:

A. Each new Alaris® System product is free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for a period of one (1) year from the date of delivery by Cardinal Health to the original purchaser.

B. The battery and each new accessory is free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of delivery by Cardinal Health to the original purchaser.

If any product requires service during the applicable warranty period, the purchaser should communicate directly with Cardinal Health to determine the appropriate repair facility. Except as provided otherwise in this warranty, repair or replacement will be carried out at Cardinal Health’s expense. The product requiring service should be returned promptly, properly packaged and postage prepaid by purchaser. Loss or damage in return shipment to the repair facility shall be at purchaser’s risk.

In no event shall Cardinal Health be liable for any incidental, indirect or consequential damages in connection with the purchase or use of any Alaris® System product. This warranty shall apply solely to the original purchaser. This warranty shall not apply to any subsequent owner or holder of the product. Furthermore, this warranty shall not apply to, and Cardinal Health shall not be responsible for, any loss or damage arising in connection with the purchase or use of any Alaris® System product which has been:

1. repaired by anyone other than an authorized Cardinal Health Service Representative;
2. altered in any way so as to affect, in Cardinal Health’s judgment, the product’s stability or reliability;
3. subjected to misuse or negligence or accident, or which has had the product’s serial or lot number altered, effaced or removed; or
4. improperly maintained or used in any manner other than in accordance with the written instructions furnished by Cardinal Health.

This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, and of all other obligations or liabilities of Cardinal Health, and Cardinal Health does not give or grant, directly or indirectly, the authority to any representative or other person to assume on behalf of Cardinal Health any other liability in connection with the sale or use of Alaris® System products.

CARDINAL HEALTH DISCLAIMS ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR APPLICATION.

See packing inserts for international warranty, if applicable.
Compliance

Electromagnetic Environment

This system complies with part 18 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following 2 conditions:

• This system may not cause harmful interference.
• This system must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The digital apparatus does not exceed the Class B limits for radio noise emissions from digital apparatus set out in the radio interference regulations of the Canadian Department of Communications (DOC).

Le present appareil numerique n'emet pas de bruits radioelectriques depassant les limites applicables aux appareils numeriques de la Classe B prescrites dans le reglement sur le brouillage radioelectrique edicte par le Ministere des Communications du Canada.

This system has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 18 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the system is operated in a commercial environment. This system generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy. If it is not installed and used in accordance with the applicable directions for use, it may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this system in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at their own expense.

The authority to operate this system is conditioned by the requirement that no modifications will be made to the system unless the changes or modifications are expressly approved by Cardinal Health, Inc.

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulation.

Cet appareil numerique de la Classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Reglement sur le materiel brouilleur du Canada.

CAUTION

Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the personnel responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the system.
The Alaris® System may include an RF transmitter as designated by the icon on the rear of the system. It operates on a 2400 - 2483.5 MHz frequency with a maximum radiated power of 100 mW. The registration numbers are:

- Canada: 1549104431A
- United States (FCC): H9PLA4137

The type LA-4137 radio card, if provided, is manufactured by Symbol Technologies, Inc., Holtsville, N.Y., 11742.

**Tables:** The Alaris® System is intended for use in the electromagnetic environments specified in the following tables.

### Table 1
**Electromagnetic Emissions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Emissions Test</th>
<th>Compliance</th>
<th>Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CISPR 11 RF Emissions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Alaris® System uses RF energy only for its internal function in normal product offering. If optional low power wireless network card (RF transmitter) is installed, following icon appears on product. Refer to network card's directions for use for further information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group 1</td>
<td>RF emissions are very low and are not likely to cause interference with nearby electronic equipment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CISPR 11 RF Emissions</strong></td>
<td>Class B</td>
<td>Alaris® System is suitable for use in all establishments, including domestic establishments and those directly connected to a public low-voltage power supply network that supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IEC 61000-3-2 Harmonic Emissions</strong></td>
<td>Class A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IEC 61000-3-2 Voltage Fluctuations Flicker Emissions</strong></td>
<td>Complies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2
Electromagnetic Immunity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Emissions Test</th>
<th>IEC 60601-1-2 Test Level</th>
<th>Compliance Level</th>
<th>Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| IEC 61000-4-2 Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) | ±6 kV contact  
±8 kV air                        | ±8 kV contact  
±15 kV air                           | Floors should be wood, concrete, or ceramic tile.  
If floors are covered with synthetic material, relative humidity should be at least 30%.  
If connector testing exemption is used, following ESD sensitivity symbol appears adjacent to each connector. " - Do Not Touch" |
| IEC 61000-4-4 Electrical Fast Transient, Burst (EFT) | ±2 kV for power supply lines  
±1 kV for input/output lines      | ±2 kV for power supply lines  
±1 kV for input/output lines     | Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment. |
| IEC 61000-4-5 Power Line Surge      | ±1 kV differential mode  
±2 kV common mode                  | ±1 kV differential mode  
±2 kV common mode                  | Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment. |
| IEC 61000-4-8 Power Frequency Magnetic Field (50/60 Hz) | 3 A/m                       | 400 A/m 50 Hz  
400 A/m 60 Hz                         | Power frequency magnetic fields should be at levels characteristic of a typical location in a typical commercial or hospital environment. |
### Table 2 (Continued)
Electromagnetic Immunity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Emissions Test</th>
<th>IEC 60601-1-2 Test Level</th>
<th>Compliance Level</th>
<th>Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IEC 61000-4-11 Voltage Dips, Short Interruptions, and Voltage Variations</td>
<td>&lt;5% $U_T$ (&gt;95% dip in $U_T$) for 0.5 cycle</td>
<td>&lt;5% $U_T$ (&gt;95% dip in $U_T$) for 0.5 cycle</td>
<td>Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40% $U_T$ (60% dip in $U_T$) for 5 cycles</td>
<td>40% $U_T$ (60% dip in $U_T$) for 5 cycles</td>
<td>If continued operation of Alaris System is required during power mains interruptions, it is recommended that Alaris System be powered from an uninterruptible power supply or a battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70% $U_T$ (30% dip in $U_T$) for 25 cycles</td>
<td>70% $U_T$ (30% dip in $U_T$) for 25 cycles</td>
<td>Alaris System does employ an internal short duration battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;5% $U_T$ (&gt;95% dip in $U_T$) for 5 sec</td>
<td>&lt;5% $U_T$ (&gt;95% dip in $U_T$) for 5 sec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alaris System (Continued)
### Table 3
Electromagnetic Immunity - Life Support Equipment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Immunity Test</th>
<th>IEC 60601-1-2 Test Level</th>
<th>Compliance Level</th>
<th>Electromagnetic Environment - Guidance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IEC 61000-4-6 Conducted RF</td>
<td>3 Vrms 150 kHz - 80 MHz</td>
<td>10 Vrms</td>
<td>Portable and mobile RF communications equipment should be used no closer to Alaris® System (including cables) than recommended separation distance calculated from equation applicable to frequency of transmitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 61000-4-3 Radiated RF</td>
<td>3 V/m 80 MHz - 2.5 GHz</td>
<td>10 V/m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recommended Separation Distance**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{12} & \quad \frac{d}{\sqrt{V_2}} \\
\text{12} & \quad \frac{d}{\sqrt{P}} 80 \text{ MHz} - 800 \text{ MHz} \\
\text{12} & \quad \frac{d}{\sqrt{P}} 80 \text{ MHz} - 2.5 \text{ GHz} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\(d\) = recommended separation distance in meters (m)

\(P\) = maximum output power rating of transmitter in watts (W) according to transmitter manufacturer.

Field strengths from fixed RF transmitters, as determined by an electromagnetic site survey, should be less than compliance level in each frequency range.

Interference may occur in vicinity of equipment marked with following symbol:
Reduce the potential for electromagnetic interference by maintaining a minimum distance between portable and mobile RF communications equipment (transmitters) and the Alaris® System as recommended in this table, based on the maximum output power of the communications equipment.

For transmitters rated at a maximum output power not listed in this table, the recommended separation distance \((d)\) in meters (m) can be determined using the equation applicable to the frequency of the transmitter, where \(P\) is the maximum output power rating of the transmitter in watts (W) based on the transmitter manufacturer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rated Maximum Output Power of Transmitter (W)</th>
<th>Separation Distance Based on Transmitter Frequency (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>150 kHz - 80 MHz Outside ISM Bands</td>
<td>150 kHz - 80 MHz In ISM Bands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d = \left[\frac{\sqrt{P}}{V_1}\right])</td>
<td>(d = \left[\frac{\sqrt{P}}{V_2}\right])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES:

2. Performed at the minimum and maximum rated input voltage.
3. $U_T$ is the AC mains voltage prior to application of the test level.
4. At 80 MHz and 800 MHz, the higher frequency range applies.
5. These guidelines may not apply in all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects and people.
6. The compliance levels in the ISM frequency bands between 150 kHz and 80 MHz, and in the frequency range 80 MHz - 2.5 GHz, are intended to decrease the likelihood that mobile/portable communications equipment could cause interference if inadvertently brought into patient areas. For this reason, an additional factor of $10/3$ is used in calculating the recommended separation distance for transmitters in these frequency ranges.
7. Field strengths from fixed transmitters [such as base stations for radio (cellular/cordless) telephones and mobile radios, amateur radio, AM/FM radio broadcast, TV broadcast] cannot be predicted theoretically with accuracy. To assess the electromagnetic environment due to fixed RF transmitters, an electromagnetic site survey should be considered. If the measured field strength in the location in which the Alaris® System is used exceeds the applicable RF compliance level, the Alaris® System should be observed to verify normal operation. If abnormal performance is observed, additional measures may be necessary, such as reorienting or relocating the Alaris® System.
8. Over the frequency range 150 kHz - 80 MHz, field strengths should be less than $[V_{1}]$ V/m.
9. The ISM (Industrial, Scientific and Medical) bands between 150 kHz and 80 MHz are 6.765 - 6.795 MHz, 13.553 - 13.567 MHz, 26.957 - 27.283 MHz, and 40.66 - 40.70 MHz.

Communications Interface Board Accessory

The CI Board contains a radio frequency IEEE 802.11b, wireless, local-area network interface (RF card). The RF card allows the Alaris® System to communicate with the Alaris® Server connected to the hospital information system. The RF card is compliant with the rules and regulations in the locations where the CI Board is sold, and is labeled as required. The United States Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Department of Communications (DOC) identification numbers are visible through the CI Board’s clear plastic cover. If an international country approval stamp is required, it is placed adjacent to the identification numbers in the area provided.
The Class B digital device limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the device is operated as intended. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy. If it is not installed and used in accordance with the applicable directions for use, it may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this device in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at their own expense. There is, however, no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If the device does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception (determined by powering system off and on), one or more of the following corrective actions should be taken:

- Reorient or relocate receiving antenna.
- Increase separation distance between system and receiver.
- Connect system into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which receiver is connected.

This Class B digital device meets the requirements of the Canadian Interference Causing Equipment Regulations.

Cet appareil numérique de la Classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Reglement sur le Matériel Brouilleur du Canada.

This Class B digital device meets the requirements of the International community.
The following Alaris® products have received a Statement of Compliance with Federal Aviation Regulations for use as a "Portable Electronic Device Aboard Aircraft". This is pursuant to the FAA Advisory Circular No. 91-21-1A and attested by an FAA Designated Engineering Representative with an FAA form 8110-3, "Statement of compliance with the Federal Aviation Regulations".

- PC Unit
- Pump Module
- Syringe Module

The Alaris® System has been assessed and complies with the following standards:

**PC Unit and overall System:** UL 60601–1, CAN/CSA C22.2 No. 601.1–M90, IEC 60601–1

**Auto-ID Module:** IEC 60825–1 (LEDs used in Auto-ID Module are not regulated by FDA in the United States; however, they are classified as a CLASS 1 LED PRODUCT in other countries under this standard.)

**Communications Interface Board Accessory:** Class B digital device limits pursuant to Parts 15 (RF Devices and Computing Devices) and 18 (Medical Devices) of the FCC Rules and Regulations. To comply with FCC and Industry Canada exposure requirements, the CI Board is approved for operation when there is more than 20 cm between the antenna and the user’s or patient’s body.

**EtCO₂ Module:** ISO 9918, ASTM F 1456-01, ASTM F 1463, EN 475, EN 864

**PCA, Pump and Syringe Modules:** IEC 60601-2-24, ANSI/AAMI ID:26

**SpO₂ Module:** EN 865
Alaris®, Guardrails® and SmartSite® are registered trademarks of Cardinal Health, Inc. or one of its subsidiaries. LNOP®, Masimo®, SET®, Signal Extraction Technology® and Signal I.Q.™ are trademarks of Masimo Corporation. Nellcor® and OxiMAX® are trademarks of Nellcor Puritan Bennett, Inc. Microstream® is a trademark of Oridion Medical 1987 Ltd. All other trademarks belong to their respective owners.